



- (51) International Patent Classification:  
*C07K 16/30* (2006.01) *A61K 47/48* (2006.01)
- (21) International Application Number:  
PCT/IB2012/056234
- (22) International Filing Date:  
7 November 2012 (07.11.2012)
- (25) Filing Language: English
- (26) Publication Language: English
- (30) Priority Data:  
61/559,015 11 November 2011 (11.11.2011) US  
61/640,641 30 April 2012 (30.04.2012) US  
61/717,288 23 October 2012 (23.10.2012) US
- (71) Applicant: RINAT NEUROSCIENCE CORP. [US/US];  
230 East Grand Avenue, South San Francisco, California  
94080 (US).
- (72) Inventors: LIU, Shu-Hui; 361 Saint Martin Drive, Red-  
wood City, California 94065 (US). HO, Wei-Hsien; 917  
Academy Avenue, Belmont, California 94002 (US).  
STROP, Pavel; 130 Barneson Avenue, #4, San Mateo,

California 94402 (US). DORYWALSKA, Magdalena,  
Grazyna; 339 Beresford Avenue, Redwood City, Califor-  
nia 94061 (US). RAJPAL, Arvind; 519 Foerster Street,  
San Francisco, California 94127 (US). SHELTON, David,  
Louis; 5845 Clover Drive, Oakland, California 94618  
(US). TRAN, Thomas-Toan; 3935 Mosher Drive, San  
Jose, California 95135 (US).

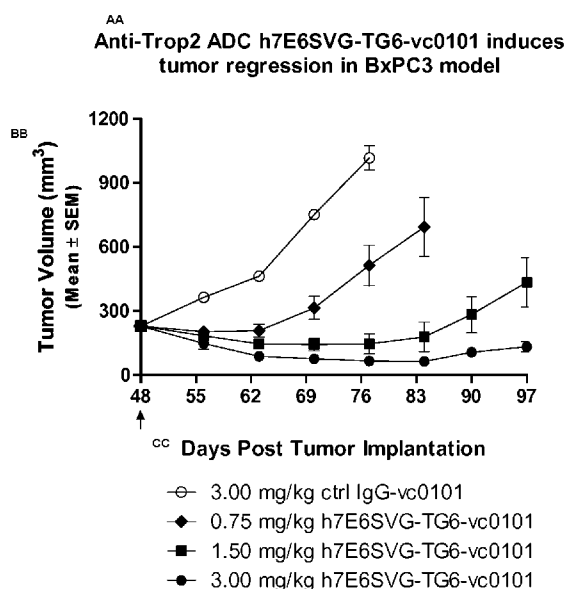
(74) Agents: KLEIMAN, Gabriel L. et al.; Pfizer Inc., 235  
East 42nd Street, New York, New York 10017 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,  
AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY,  
BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM,  
DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT,  
HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP,  
KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD,  
ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI,  
NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU,  
RW, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ,  
TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA,  
ZM, ZW.

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: ANTIBODIES SPECIFIC FOR TROP-2 AND THEIR USES

**Figure 9A**



(57) Abstract: The present invention provides antibodies that specifically bind to trophoblast cell-surface antigen-2 (Trop-2). The invention further provides antibody conjugates comprising such antibodies, antibody encoding nucleic acids, and methods of obtaining such antibodies. The invention further relates to therapeutic methods for use of these antibodies and Trop-2 antibody conjugates for the treatment of a condition associated with Trop-2 expression (e.g., cancer), such as colon, esophageal, gastric, head and neck, lung, ovarian, or pancreatic cancer.



**(84) Designated States** (unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Declarations under Rule 4.17:**

— as to the identity of the inventor (Rule 4.17(i))

— as to applicant's entitlement to apply for and be granted a patent (Rule 4.17(ii))

— as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii))

**Published:**

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report (Rule 48.2(g))

— with sequence listing part of description (Rule 5.2(a))

## ANTIBODIES SPECIFIC FOR TROP-2 AND THEIR USES

Related Applications

This application claims the benefits of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/559,015 filed November 11, 2011, U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/640,641 filed April 30, 2012, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/717,288 filed October 23, 2012 which are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

Field

The present invention relates to antibodies, e.g., full length antibodies or antigen binding fragments thereof, that specifically bind to trophoblast cell-surface antigen (Trop-2). The invention further relates to antibody conjugates (e.g., antibody-drug-conjugates) comprising the Trop-2 antibodies, compositions comprising the Trop-2 antibodies, and methods of using the Trop-2 antibodies and their conjugates for treating conditions associated with Trop-2 expression (e.g., cancer).

Background

Trophoblast cell-surface antigen (Trop-2), also referred to as M1S1, GA733-1 (gastric antigen 733-1), EGP-1 (epithelial glycoprotein-1), or TACSTD2 (tumor-associated calcium signal transducer), is a cell surface glycoprotein originally identified in human placental trophoblast and subsequently found to be highly expressed in most human carcinomas, but showed only restricted or limited expression in normal adult tissues. See, e.g., Varughese et al., Gynecologic Oncology, 122:171-177, 2011. Trop-2 is highly conserved among species. For example, human Trop-2 protein shares 79% identity with murine Trop-2 protein. See Cubas et al., Molecular Cancer, 9:253, 2010. Although the biological role of Trop-2 is still unclear, various studies have shown that overexpression of Trop-2 correlates with increased tumor aggressiveness, metastasis, and poor prognosis in various human carcinomas, such as colon cancer, ovarian cancer, and pancreatic cancer. See, e.g., Fang et al., Int. J. Colorectal Dis, 24:875-884, 2009; Bignotti et al., Eur. J. Cancer, 46:944-953, 2010; and Fong et al., Br J Cancer, 99:1290-1295, 2008. Studies have also shown that Trop-2 contributes to tumor pathogenesis at least in part by activating the ERK1/2 MAPK pathway which has

- 2 -

important implications in cancer cell proliferation, migration, invasion, and survival. See Cubas et al., 2010, supra.

Overexpression of Trop-2 by epithelial tumor cells and its transmembrane location render Trop-2 an attractive target for cancer immunotherapy. Accordingly, a high affinity antibody to Trop-2, particularly to human Trop-2, would make a superior therapeutic agent for cancer treatment in human patients. Although various Trop-2 antibodies have been disclosed (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 7,420,041 (antibody AR47A6.4.2), U.S. Pat. No. 5,850,854 (antibody BR110), U.S. Pat. No. 6,653,104 (antibody RS7), U.S. Pat. No. 7,517,964 (antibody RS7), US2012/0237518), it has been exceedingly difficult to identify monoclonal antibodies having high affinity, high specificity, and potent cytotoxic or tumor killing/inhibition/regression activity. There remains a need for antibodies and other immunotherapeutic agents (such as antibody-drug conjugates) directed against Trop-2 having improved efficacy and safety profile, and which are suitable for use with human patients.

### Summary

The invention disclosed herein is directed to antibodies and antibody conjugates (e.g., antibody-drug conjugates) that bind to Trop-2. In one aspect, the invention provides an antibody or antibody conjugate that specifically binds to domain 3 (e.g., amino acid residues 152-206) and domain 4 (e.g., amino acid residues 209-274) of human Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO:27) with a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 6.5 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises a) a heavy chain variable (VH) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VH complementary determining region one (CDR1) comprising the sequence SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30), GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36), or GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence VIWTX<sub>1</sub>GX<sub>2</sub>TDYNSALMX<sub>3</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or S; X<sub>2</sub> is S or V; X<sub>3</sub> is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 49), or WTX<sub>1</sub>GX<sub>2</sub> wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or S, X<sub>2</sub> is S or V (SEQ ID NO: 50); and iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35); DYDRYTX<sub>1</sub>DY, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 82); or DYDRYTX<sub>1</sub>DY, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid,

- 3 -

e.g., A, R, N, D, C, Q, E, G, H, I, L, K, M, F, P, S, T, W, Y, or V (SEQ ID NO: 83) and/or  
 b) a light chain variable region (VL) region complementary determining regions  
 comprising (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASKSVSTSX<sub>1</sub>YSYMH, wherein  
 X<sub>1</sub> is G, L, or N (SEQ ID NO: 63); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence LASNLES  
 5 (SEQ ID NO: 55); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence VLQHSRELPYT (SEQ  
 ID NO: 56). In some embodiments, the antibody does not comprise a heavy chain  
 variable region of the sequence  
 QVQLKESGPGLVAPSQSLSITCTVSGFSLTSYGVHWVRQPPGKGLEWLGVIWTGGST  
 DYNALMSRLSINKDNSKSQVFLKMNSLQTDDTAMYYCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGT  
 10 SVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 2) and a light chain variable region of the sequence  
 DIVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHWWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYLASNLE  
 SGVPARFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEEEDAATYYCQHSRELPYTFGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID  
 NO: 1).

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen  
 15 binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody  
 comprises: a VH region comprising a VH CDR1, VH CDR2, and VH CDR3 of the VH  
 sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 5, 84, or 85; and/or a VL region comprising VL CDR1,  
 VL CDR2, and VL CDR3 of the VL sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 3 or 6. In some  
 embodiments, the VH region comprises (i) a VH CDR1 comprising the sequence  
 20 SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30), GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36), or GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO:  
 37); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38)  
 or WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence  
 DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35) or DYDRYTX<sub>1</sub>DY, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID  
 NO: 82). In some embodiments, the VL region comprises (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the  
 25 sequence RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54) or RASKSVSTSLYSYMH (SEQ ID  
 NO: 57); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55); and (iii)  
 a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56). In some  
 embodiments, the antibody comprises (a) heavy chain CDRs comprising: (i) a CDR1  
 comprising the sequence SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30), GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36), or  
 30 GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37); (ii) a CDR2 comprising the sequence  
 VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) or WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39); and (iii) a  
 CDR3 comprising the sequence DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35), DYDRYTMDY

- 4 -

(SEQ ID NO: 99), or DYDRYTEDY (SEQ ID NO: 100); and b) light chain CDRs comprising (i) a CDR1 comprising the sequence RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54) or RASKSVSTSLYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 57); (ii) a CDR2 comprising the sequence LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55); and (iii) a CDR3 comprising the sequence QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56). In some embodiments, the VH region comprises the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 5, 84, or 85 or a variant with one or several conservative amino acid substitutions in residues that are not within a CDR and/or the VL region comprises the amino acid sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 3, 6, or a variant thereof with one or several amino acid substitutions in amino acids that are not within a CDR. In some  
5  
10  
15  
embodiments, the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 66 and/or a heavy chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 65. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a VH region produced by the expression vector with ATCC Accession No. PTA-12872. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a VL region produced by the expression vector with ATCC Accession No. PTA-12871.

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to domain 1 (e.g., amino acid residues 31-71) of human Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO:27) with a binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 35 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises a) a heavy chain variable (VH) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VH CDR1 comprising the sequence SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40), GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41), or GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42); (ii) a VH CDR2  
20  
25  
comprising the sequence  $NIX_1PSDSYSNYNX_2KFKD$  wherein  $X_1$  is Y or F;  $X_2$  is Q or K (SEQ ID NO: 51), or  $X_1PSDSY$  wherein  $X_1$  is Y or F (SEQ ID NO:52); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence  $GSX_1FDY$  wherein  $X_1$  is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 53); and/or b) a VL region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising  
30  
the sequence YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence  $X_1Q SX_2SWPFT$  wherein  $X_1$  is Q or S;  $X_2$  is N or F (SEQ ID NO: 64).

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises: a VH region comprising a VH CDR1, VH CDR2, and VH CDR3 of the VH sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 13; and/or a VL region comprising VL CDR1, VL CDR2, and VL CDR3 of the VL sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 12. In some embodiments, the VH region comprises (i) a VH CDR1 comprising the sequence SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40), GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41), or GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence NIFPSDSYSNYNKKFKD (SEQ ID NO: 46) or FPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 47); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence GSGFDY (SEQ ID NO: 48). In some embodiments, the VL region comprises (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence SQSFSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 62). In some embodiments, the antibody comprises (a) heavy chain CDRs comprising: (i) a CDR1 comprising the sequence SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40), GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41), or GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42); (ii) a CDR2 comprising the sequence NIFPSDSYSNYNKKFKD (SEQ ID NO: 46) or FPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 47); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence GSGFDY (SEQ ID NO: 48); and b) light chain CDRs comprising: (i) a CDR1 comprising the sequence RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59); (ii) a CDR2 comprising the sequence YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60); and (iii) a CDR3 comprising the sequence SQSFSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 62). In some embodiments, the VH region comprises the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 13 or a variant with one or several conservative amino acid substitutions in residues that are not within a CDR and/or the VL region comprises the amino acid sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 12 or a variant thereof with one or several amino acid substitutions in amino acids that are not within a CDR. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 68 and a heavy chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 67.

In some embodiments, the antibody can be a human antibody, a humanized antibody, or a chimeric antibody. In some embodiments, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody.

In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a constant region. In some embodiments, the antibody is of the human IgG1, IgG2 or IgG2Δa, IgG3, or IgG4

- 6 -

subclass. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a glycosylated constant region. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a constant region having increased binding affinity to one or more human Fc gamma receptor(s).

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody which specifically  
5 binds to Trop-2 and competes with the antibodies as described herein (e.g., m7E6, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6\_SVGN, m6G11, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF). In some embodiments, the antibody competes with h7E6\_SVG and  
10 has a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 6.5 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

In another aspect, the invention provides a conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment as described herein, wherein the antibody or the antigen binding fragment is conjugated to an agent, wherein the agent is selected from the  
15 group consisting of a cytotoxic agent, an immunomodulating agent, an imaging agent, a therapeutic protein, a biopolymer, and an oligonucleotide. In some embodiments, the agent is a cytotoxic agent (e.g., monomethyl auristatin D (MMAD) or other auristatins).

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody comprising an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody. In some  
20 embodiments, the tag comprises amino acid glutamine (Q) or an amino acid sequence GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is G, K, or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88). In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the  
25 conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site, such as G, GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is G, K, or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88).

30 In one variation, the invention provides an isolated antibody comprising an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag and an amino acid modification at position 222, 340, or 370 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme), wherein the modification is an amino



- 7 -

acid deletion, insertion, substitution, mutation, or any combination thereof. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag (e.g., Q, GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is G, K, or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88)) engineered at a specific site (e.g., at a carboxyl terminus of the heavy or light chain or at an another site) of the Trop-2 antibody and an amino acid modification at position 222, 340, or 370 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme). In some embodiments, the amino acid modification is a substitution from lysine to arginine.

In another aspect, the invention provides a conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment as described herein, wherein the conjugate comprises the formula: antibody-(acyl donor glutamine-containing tag)-(linker)-(cytotoxic agent), wherein the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag is engineered at a specific site of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment (e.g., at a carboxyl terminus of the heavy or light chain or at an another site), wherein the tag is conjugated to a linker (e.g., a linker containing one or more reactive amines (e.g., primary amine NH<sub>2</sub>)), and wherein the linker is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g., MMAD or other auristatins).

In some embodiments, the conjugate is selected from the group consisting of 1) antibody-LLQGA-(acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl)-0101, wherein acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl is AcLys-VC-PABC, and wherein 0101 is 2-methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-{(2*S*)-2-[(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-[(1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-yl)ethyl]amino}propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide; 2) antibody-LLQGA- AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD; 3) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101; 4) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD; 5) antibody -GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101; and 6) antibody-GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD. In some embodiments, the conjugate comprises an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222. In some embodiments, the conjugate comprises an amino acid lysine (K) deletion at the C-terminus of the heavy chain of the antibody.

In another aspect, the invention provides a conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment as described herein, the conjugate comprises amino acid substitutions at positions N297Q and K222R, a linker comprising amino-PEG6-propionyl, and a cytotoxic agent (e.g., MMAD or other auristatins).

5 In another aspect, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

10 In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated polynucleotide comprising a nucleotide sequence encoding the Trop-2 antibody as described herein. In some embodiments, provided is a vector comprising the polynucleotide.

In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated host cell that recombinantly produces the Trop-2 antibody as described herein.

15 In another aspect, the invention provides a method for treating a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a subject comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition as described herein. In some embodiments, the condition is a cancer. In some embodiments, the cancer is selected from the group consisting of bladder, breast, cervical, choriocarcinoma, colon, esophageal, gastric, glioblastoma, head and neck, kidney, lung, oral, ovarian, pancreatic, prostate cancer, and skin cancer.

20 In another aspect, the invention provides a method of inhibiting tumor growth or progression in a subject who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition as described herein.

25 In another aspect, the invention provides a method of inhibiting metastasis of Trop-2 expressing cancer cells in a subject, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition as described herein.

30 In another aspect, the invention provides a method of inducing tumor regression in a subject who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition as described herein.

In some embodiments, the antibody or the conjugate as described herein can be administered parenterally in an individual. In some embodiments, the individual is a human.

In some embodiments, the antibody described herein does not comprise a heavy chain variable region of the sequence QVQLKESGPGLVAPSQSLSITCTVSGFSLTSYGVHWVRQPPGKGLEWLGVIWTGGST DYNALMSRLSINKDNSKSQVFLKMNSLQTDDTAMYYCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGGGT SVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 2) and a light chain variable region of the sequence DIVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQPPKLLIYLASNLE SGVPARFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEEEDAATYYCQHSRELPYTFGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 1).

#### Brief Description of the Figures/Drawings

Figure 1 depicts *in vivo* efficacy studies of various Trop-2 mouse antibodies (7E6, 15E2, and 18B1) in target-expressing Colo205 xenograft model.

Figure 2A depicts *in vivo* efficacy studies of various Trop-2 mouse antibodies (7E6, 15E2, and 18B1) in target-expressing A431 xenograft model.

Figure 2B depicts inhibition of A431 Xenograft tumor growth by Trop-2 antibody 7E6 in a dose-response study.

Figure 2C depicts inhibition of A431 Xenograft tumor growth by Trop-2 antibodies 6G11, 7E6, and 18B1 in A431 xenograft model.

Figure 3 depicts the ADCC activity of chimeric and humanized Trop-2 7E6 antibodies in A431 cells. 7E6 corresponds to the chimeric Trop-2 7E6 antibody (e.g., antibody comprising SEQ ID NOs: 2 and 3), h7E6-WT corresponds to an antibody comprising SEQ ID NOs: 4 and 3, h7E6-SVG corresponds to an antibody comprising SEQ ID NOs: 5 and 3, h7E6-L corresponds to an antibody comprising SEQ ID NOs: 4 and 6, h7E6-SVGL corresponds to an antibody comprising SEQ ID NOs: 5 and 6, and anti-EGFR (Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor) corresponds to a positive control antibody.

Figure 4 depicts the amino acid sequence alignment between human Trop-1 (SEQ ID NO: 29) and human Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO: 27), and the consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 69).

Figure 5 depicts the amino acid sequence alignment between human Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO: 27) and mouse Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO: 28), and the consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 70).

Figure 6A depicts the amino acid sequence alignment of the heavy chain variable regions of Trop-2 antibodies h7E6 (SEQ ID NO: 4), h7E6\_SVG (SEQ ID NO: 5), and m7E6 (SEQ ID NO: 2), and their consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 71).

Figure 6B depicts the amino acid sequence alignment of the light chain variable regions of Trop-2 antibodies h7E6\_VL (SEQ ID NO: 3), h7E6\_VL\_L (SEQ ID NO: 6), h7E6\_VL\_N (SEQ ID NO: 7), and m7E6\_VL (SEQ ID NO: 1), and their consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 72).

Figure 7A depicts the amino acid sequence alignment of the heavy chain variable regions of Trop-2 antibodies h6G11 (SEQ ID NO: 11), h6G11\_FKG\_SF (SEQ ID NO: 13), and m6G11 (SEQ ID NO: 9), and their consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 73).

Figure 7B depicts the amino acid sequence alignment of the light chain variable regions of Trop-2 antibodies h6G11 (SEQ ID NO: 10), h6G11\_FKG\_SF (SEQ ID NO: 12), and m6G11 (SEQ ID NO: 8), and their consensus sequence (SEQ ID NO: 74).

Figure 8 depicts that chimeric (7E6) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD induced long term tumor regression in BxPC3 Xenograft model. AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD corresponds to Acetyl-Lysine-Valine-Citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl- Monomethyl Auristatin D. LCQ03 and TG6 correspond to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tags SEQ ID NOs:78 and 79, respectively. NNC-TG1-vcMMAD represents control antibody conjugated to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tag (SEQ ID NO: 75) and vcMMAD.

Figure 9A depicts that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to vc0101 induced tumor regression in pancreatic tumor BxPC3 xenograft model. Vc0101 corresponds to AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (Acetyl-Lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl-(2-methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-[(2*S*)-2-[(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-[(1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-yl)ethyl]amino]propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide). TG6 corresponds to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tag SEQ ID NO:79.

Figure 9B depicts that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody having amino acid substitutions at positions 297 and 222 and conjugated to PEG6-MMAD induced tumor

regression in pancreatic tumor BxPC3 xenograft model. PEG6-MMAD corresponds to (Propylene Glycol)<sub>6</sub>-propionyl-MMAD.

Figure 9C depicts that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody having amino acid substitution at position 222 and conjugated to vc0101 induced tumor regression in pancreatic tumor BxPC3 xenograft model. LCQ04 corresponds to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tag SEQ ID NO: 79. vc0101 corresponds to AcLys-vc-PABC-0101.

Figure 10 depicts that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to vc0101 induced tumor regression in colorectal tumor Colo205 xenograft model. TG6 and LCQ03 correspond to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tags SEQ ID NOs: 79 and 78, respectively.

Figure 11 depicts that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to vc0101 induced tumor regression in Ovarian PDX Ova196756 xenograft model. TG6 corresponds to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tag SEQ ID NO: 79.

Figure 12A shows that humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to vc0101 has superior efficacy than gemcitabine to induce tumor regression in Pan0146 pancreatic PDX model. TG6 corresponds to glutamine-containing transglutaminase tag SEQ ID NO: 79 (same as in Figure 12B).

Figure 12B shows that continuous dosing of humanized (h7E6SVG) Trop-2 antibody conjugated to vc0101 resulted in sustained tumor regression in pancreatic PDX Pan0146 xenograft model.

Figure 13 shows that that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with PEG6-MMAD induced tumor regression in pancreatic Pan144607 PDX model.

Figure 14 shows that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with PEG6-MMAD induced tumor regression in pancreatic Pan0135 PDX model.

#### Detailed Description

The invention disclosed herein provides antibodies and antibody conjugates (e.g., antibody-drug conjugates) that specifically bind to Trop-2 (e.g., human Trop-2). The invention also provides polynucleotides encoding these antibodies, compositions comprising these antibodies, and methods of making and using these antibodies. The

invention also provides methods for treating a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a subject, such as cancer (e.g., colon, gastric, head and neck, lung, ovarian, and pancreatic cancer).

## 5 General Techniques

The practice of the present invention will employ, unless otherwise indicated, conventional techniques of molecular biology (including recombinant techniques), microbiology, cell biology, biochemistry and immunology, which are within the skill of the art. Such techniques are explained fully in the literature, such as, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, second edition (Sambrook et al., 1989) Cold Spring Harbor Press; Oligonucleotide Synthesis (M.J. Gait, ed., 1984); Methods in Molecular Biology, Humana Press; Cell Biology: A Laboratory Notebook (J.E. Cellis, ed., 1998) Academic Press; Animal Cell Culture (R.I. Freshney, ed., 1987); Introduction to Cell and Tissue Culture (J.P. Mather and P.E. Roberts, 1998) Plenum Press; Cell and Tissue Culture: Laboratory Procedures (A. Doyle, J.B. Griffiths, and D.G. Newell, eds., 1993-1998) J. Wiley and Sons; Methods in Enzymology (Academic Press, Inc.); Handbook of Experimental Immunology (D.M. Weir and C.C. Blackwell, eds.); Gene Transfer Vectors for Mammalian Cells (J.M. Miller and M.P. Calos, eds., 1987); Current Protocols in Molecular Biology (F.M. Ausubel et al., eds., 1987); PCR: The Polymerase Chain Reaction, (Mullis et al., eds., 1994); Current Protocols in Immunology (J.E. Coligan et al., eds., 1991); Short Protocols in Molecular Biology (Wiley and Sons, 1999); Immunobiology (C.A. Janeway and P. Travers, 1997); Antibodies (P. Finch, 1997); Antibodies: a practical approach (D. Catty., ed., IRL Press, 1988-1989); Monoclonal antibodies: a practical approach (P. Shepherd and C. Dean, eds., Oxford University Press, 2000); Using antibodies: a laboratory manual (E. Harlow and D. Lane (Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, 1999); The Antibodies (M. Zanetti and J.D. Capra, eds., Harwood Academic Publishers, 1995).

## Definitions

30 An "antibody" is an immunoglobulin molecule capable of specific binding to a target, such as a carbohydrate, polynucleotide, lipid, polypeptide, etc., through at least one antigen recognition site, located in the variable region of the immunoglobulin

molecule. As used herein, the term encompasses not only intact polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies, but also fragments thereof (such as Fab, Fab', F(ab')<sub>2</sub>, Fv), single chain (ScFv) and domain antibodies (including, for example, shark and camelid antibodies), and fusion proteins comprising an antibody, and any other modified configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule that comprises an antigen recognition site. An antibody includes an antibody of any class, such as IgG, IgA, or IgM (or sub-class thereof), and the antibody need not be of any particular class. Depending on the antibody amino acid sequence of the constant region of its heavy chains, immunoglobulins can be assigned to different classes. There are five major classes of immunoglobulins: IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM, and several of these may be further divided into subclasses (isotypes), e.g., IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA1 and IgA2. The heavy-chain constant regions that correspond to the different classes of immunoglobulins are called alpha, delta, epsilon, gamma, and mu, respectively. The subunit structures and three-dimensional configurations of different classes of immunoglobulins are well known.

The term "antigen binding fragment" or "antigen binding portion" of an antibody, as used herein, refers to one or more fragments of an intact antibody that retain the ability to specifically bind to a given antigen (e.g., Trop-2). Antigen binding functions of an antibody can be performed by fragments of an intact antibody. Examples of binding fragments encompassed within the term "antigen binding fragment" of an antibody include Fab; Fab'; F(ab')<sub>2</sub>; an Fd fragment consisting of the VH and CH1 domains; an Fv fragment consisting of the VL and VH domains of a single arm of an antibody; a single domain antibody (dAb) fragment (Ward et al., Nature 341:544-546, 1989), and an isolated complementarity determining region (CDR).

An antibody, an antibody conjugate, or a polypeptide that "preferentially binds" or "specifically binds" (used interchangeably herein) to a target (e.g., Trop-2 protein) is a term well understood in the art, and methods to determine such specific or preferential binding are also well known in the art. A molecule is said to exhibit "specific binding" or "preferential binding" if it reacts or associates more frequently, more rapidly, with greater duration and/or with greater affinity with a particular cell or substance than it does with alternative cells or substances. An antibody "specifically binds" or "preferentially binds" to a target if it binds with greater affinity, avidity, more readily, and/or with greater

duration than it binds to other substances. For example, an antibody that specifically or preferentially binds to a Trop-2 epitope is an antibody that binds this epitope with greater affinity, avidity, more readily, and/or with greater duration than it binds to other Trop-2 epitopes or non-Trop-2 epitopes. It is also understood that by reading this definition, for example, an antibody (or moiety or epitope) that specifically or preferentially binds to a first target may or may not specifically or preferentially bind to a second target. As such, “specific binding” or “preferential binding” does not necessarily require (although it can include) exclusive binding. Generally, but not necessarily, reference to binding means preferential binding.

A “variable region” of an antibody refers to the variable region of the antibody light chain or the variable region of the antibody heavy chain, either alone or in combination. As known in the art, the variable regions of the heavy and light chain each consist of four framework regions (FR) connected by three complementarity determining regions (CDRs) also known as hypervariable regions. The CDRs in each chain are held together in close proximity by the FRs and, with the CDRs from the other chain, contribute to the formation of the antigen binding site of antibodies. There are at least two techniques for determining CDRs: (1) an approach based on cross-species sequence variability (i.e., Kabat et al. Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, (5th ed., 1991, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda MD)); and (2) an approach based on crystallographic studies of antigen-antibody complexes (Al-lazikani et al., 1997, J. Molec. Biol. 273:927-948). As used herein, a CDR may refer to CDRs defined by either approach or by a combination of both approaches.

A “CDR” of a variable domain are amino acid residues within the variable region that are identified in accordance with the definitions of the Kabat, Chothia, the accumulation of both Kabat and Chothia, AbM, contact, and/or conformational definitions or any method of CDR determination well known in the art. Antibody CDRs may be identified as the hypervariable regions originally defined by Kabat et al. See, e.g., Kabat et al., 1992, Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th ed., Public Health Service, NIH, Washington D.C. The positions of the CDRs may also be identified as the structural loop structures originally described by Chothia and others. See, e.g., Chothia et al., Nature 342:877-883, 1989. Other approaches to CDR identification include the “AbM definition,” which is a compromise between Kabat and Chothia and is



derived using Oxford Molecular's AbM antibody modeling software (now Accelrys®), or the "contact definition" of CDRs based on observed antigen contacts, set forth in MacCallum et al., J. Mol. Biol., 262:732-745, 1996. In another approach, referred to herein as the "conformational definition" of CDRs, the positions of the CDRs may be identified as the residues that make enthalpic contributions to antigen binding. See, e.g., Makabe et al., Journal of Biological Chemistry, 283:1156-1166, 2008. Still other CDR boundary definitions may not strictly follow one of the above approaches, but will nonetheless overlap with at least a portion of the Kabat CDRs, although they may be shortened or lengthened in light of prediction or experimental findings that particular residues or groups of residues or even entire CDRs do not significantly impact antigen binding. As used herein, a CDR may refer to CDRs defined by any approach known in the art, including combinations of approaches. The methods used herein may utilize CDRs defined according to any of these approaches. For any given embodiment containing more than one CDR, the CDRs may be defined in accordance with any of Kabat, Chothia, extended, AbM, contact, and/or conformational definitions.

As used herein, "monoclonal antibody" refers to an antibody obtained from a population of substantially homogeneous antibodies, i.e., the individual antibodies comprising the population are identical except for possible naturally-occurring mutations that may be present in minor amounts. Monoclonal antibodies are highly specific, being directed against a single antigenic site. Furthermore, in contrast to polyclonal antibody preparations, which typically include different antibodies directed against different determinants (epitopes), each monoclonal antibody is directed against a single determinant on the antigen. The modifier "monoclonal" indicates the character of the antibody as being obtained from a substantially homogeneous population of antibodies, and is not to be construed as requiring production of the antibody by any particular method. For example, the monoclonal antibodies to be used in accordance with the present invention may be made by the hybridoma method first described by Kohler and Milstein, Nature 256:495, 1975, or may be made by recombinant DNA methods such as described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,816,567. The monoclonal antibodies may also be isolated from phage libraries generated using the techniques described in McCafferty et al., Nature 348:552-554, 1990, for example.

As used herein, "humanized" antibody refers to forms of non-human (*e.g.* murine) antibodies that are chimeric immunoglobulins, immunoglobulin chains, or fragments thereof (such as Fv, Fab, Fab', F(ab')<sub>2</sub> or other antigen binding subsequences of antibodies) that contain minimal sequence derived from non-human immunoglobulin.

5 Preferably, humanized antibodies are human immunoglobulins (recipient antibody) in which residues from a complementary determining region (CDR) of the recipient are replaced by residues from a CDR of a non-human species (donor antibody) such as mouse, rat, or rabbit having the desired specificity, affinity, and capacity. In some instances, Fv framework region (FR) residues of the human immunoglobulin are  
10 replaced by corresponding non-human residues. Furthermore, the humanized antibody may comprise residues that are found neither in the recipient antibody nor in the imported CDR or framework sequences, but are included to further refine and optimize antibody performance. In general, the humanized antibody will comprise substantially all of at least one, and typically two, variable domains, in which all or substantially all of  
15 the CDR regions correspond to those of a non-human immunoglobulin and all or substantially all of the FR regions are those of a human immunoglobulin consensus sequence. The humanized antibody optimally also will comprise at least a portion of an immunoglobulin constant region or domain (Fc), typically that of a human immunoglobulin. Preferred are antibodies having Fc regions modified as described in  
20 WO 99/58572. Other forms of humanized antibodies have one or more CDRs (CDR L1, CDR L2, CDR L3, CDR H1, CDR H2, or CDR H3) which are altered with respect to the original antibody, which are also termed one or more CDRs "derived from" one or more CDRs from the original antibody.

As used herein, "human antibody" means an antibody having an amino acid  
25 sequence corresponding to that of an antibody produced by a human and/or which has been made using any of the techniques for making human antibodies known to those skilled in the art or disclosed herein. This definition of a human antibody includes antibodies comprising at least one human heavy chain polypeptide or at least one human light chain polypeptide. One such example is an antibody comprising murine  
30 light chain and human heavy chain polypeptides. Human antibodies can be produced using various techniques known in the art. In one embodiment, the human antibody is selected from a phage library, where that phage library expresses human antibodies

(Vaughan et al., Nature Biotechnology, 14:309-314, 1996; Sheets et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA) 95:6157-6162, 1998; Hoogenboom and Winter, J. Mol. Biol., 227:381, 1991; Marks et al., J. Mol. Biol., 222:581, 1991). Human antibodies can also be made by immunization of animals into which human immunoglobulin loci have been  
5 transgenically introduced in place of the endogenous loci, e.g., mice in which the endogenous immunoglobulin genes have been partially or completely inactivated. This approach is described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,545,807; 5,545,806; 5,569,825; 5,625,126; 5,633,425; and 5,661,016. Alternatively, the human antibody may be prepared by immortalizing human B lymphocytes that produce an antibody directed against a target  
10 antigen (such B lymphocytes may be recovered from an individual or from single cell cloning of the cDNA, or may have been immunized *in vitro*). See, e.g., Cole et al. Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy, Alan R. Liss, p. 77, 1985; Boerner et al., J. Immunol., 147 (1):86-95, 1991; and U.S. Pat. No. 5,750,373.

The term "chimeric antibody" is intended to refer to antibodies in which the  
15 variable region sequences are derived from one species and the constant region sequences are derived from another species, such as an antibody in which the variable region sequences are derived from a mouse antibody and the constant region sequences are derived from a human antibody.

The terms "polypeptide", "oligopeptide", "peptide" and "protein" are used  
20 interchangeably herein to refer to chains of amino acids of any length, preferably, relatively short (e.g., 10-100 amino acids). The chain may be linear or branched, it may comprise modified amino acids, and/or may be interrupted by non-amino acids. The terms also encompass an amino acid chain that has been modified naturally or by intervention; for example, disulfide bond formation, glycosylation, lipidation, acetylation,  
25 phosphorylation, or any other manipulation or modification, such as conjugation with a labeling component. Also included within the definition are, for example, polypeptides containing one or more analogs of an amino acid (including, for example, unnatural amino acids, etc.), as well as other modifications known in the art. It is understood that the polypeptides can occur as single chains or associated chains.

30 A "monovalent antibody" comprises one antigen binding site per molecule (e.g., IgG or Fab). In some instances, a monovalent antibody can have more than one antigen binding sites, but the binding sites are from different antigens.

A “bivalent antibody” comprises two antigen binding sites per molecule (e.g., IgG). In some instances, the two binding sites have the same antigen specificities. However, bivalent antibodies may be bispecific.

5 A “bispecific,” “dual-specific” or “bifunctional” antibody is a hybrid antibody having two different antigen binding sites. The two antigen binding sites of a bispecific antibody bind to two different epitopes, which may reside on the same or different protein targets.

Antibodies of the invention can be produced using techniques well known in the art, e.g., recombinant technologies, phage display technologies, synthetic technologies or combinations of such technologies or other technologies readily known in the art  
10 (see, for example, Jayasena, S.D., Clin. Chem., 45: 1628-50, 1999 and Fellouse, F.A., et al, J. Mol. Biol., 373(4):924-40, 2007).

As known in the art, “polynucleotide,” or “nucleic acid,” as used interchangeably herein, refer to chains of nucleotides of any length, and include DNA and RNA. The nucleotides can be deoxyribonucleotides, ribonucleotides, modified nucleotides or  
15 bases, and/or their analogs, or any substrate that can be incorporated into a chain by DNA or RNA polymerase. A polynucleotide may comprise modified nucleotides, such as methylated nucleotides and their analogs. If present, modification to the nucleotide structure may be imparted before or after assembly of the chain. The sequence of nucleotides may be interrupted by non-nucleotide components. A polynucleotide may  
20 be further modified after polymerization, such as by conjugation with a labeling component. Other types of modifications include, for example, “caps”, substitution of one or more of the naturally occurring nucleotides with an analog, internucleotide modifications such as, for example, those with uncharged linkages (e.g., methyl phosphonates, phosphotriesters, phosphoamidates, carbamates, etc.) and with charged  
25 linkages (e.g., phosphorothioates, phosphorodithioates, etc.), those containing pendant moieties, such as, for example, proteins (e.g., nucleases, toxins, antibodies, signal peptides, poly-L-lysine, etc.), those with intercalators (e.g., acridine, psoralen, etc.), those containing chelators (e.g., metals, radioactive metals, boron, oxidative metals, etc.), those containing alkylators, those with modified linkages (e.g., alpha anomeric  
30 nucleic acids, etc.), as well as unmodified forms of the polynucleotide(s). Further, any of the hydroxyl groups ordinarily present in the sugars may be replaced, for example, by phosphonate groups, phosphate groups, protected by standard protecting groups, or

activated to prepare additional linkages to additional nucleotides, or may be conjugated to solid supports. The 5' and 3' terminal OH can be phosphorylated or substituted with amines or organic capping group moieties of from 1 to 20 carbon atoms. Other hydroxyls may also be derivatized to standard protecting groups. Polynucleotides can also contain analogous forms of ribose or deoxyribose sugars that are generally known in the art, including, for example, 2'-O-methyl-, 2'-O-allyl, 2'-fluoro- or 2'-azido-ribose, carbocyclic sugar analogs, alpha- or beta-anomeric sugars, epimeric sugars such as arabinose, xyloses or lyxoses, pyranose sugars, furanose sugars, sedoheptuloses, acyclic analogs and abasic nucleoside analogs such as methyl riboside. One or more phosphodiester linkages may be replaced by alternative linking groups. These alternative linking groups include, but are not limited to, embodiments wherein phosphate is replaced by P(O)S("thioate"), P(S)S ("dithioate"), (O)NR<sub>2</sub> ("amidate"), P(O)R, P(O)OR', CO or CH<sub>2</sub> ("formacetal"), in which each R or R' is independently H or substituted or unsubstituted alkyl (1-20 C) optionally containing an ether (-O-) linkage, aryl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl or araldyl. Not all linkages in a polynucleotide need be identical. The preceding description applies to all polynucleotides referred to herein, including RNA and DNA.

As known in the art a "constant region" of an antibody refers to the constant region of the antibody light chain or the constant region of the antibody heavy chain, either alone or in combination.

As used herein, "substantially pure" refers to material which is at least 50% pure (i.e., free from contaminants), more preferably, at least 90% pure, more preferably, at least 95% pure, yet more preferably, at least 98% pure, and most preferably, at least 99% pure.

A "host cell" includes an individual cell or cell culture that can be or has been a recipient for vector(s) for incorporation of polynucleotide inserts. Host cells include progeny of a single host cell, and the progeny may not necessarily be completely identical (in morphology or in genomic DNA complement) to the original parent cell due to natural, accidental, or deliberate mutation. A host cell includes cells transfected in vivo with a polynucleotide(s) of this invention.

As known in the art, the term "Fc region" is used to define a C-terminal region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain. The "Fc region" may be a native sequence Fc region

or a variant Fc region. Although the boundaries of the Fc region of an immunoglobulin heavy chain might vary, the human IgG heavy chain Fc region is usually defined to stretch from an amino acid residue at position Cys226, or from Pro230, to the carboxyl-terminus thereof. The numbering of the residues in the Fc region is that of the EU index as in Kabat. Kabat et al., Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, 5th Ed. Public Health Service, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., 1991. The Fc region of an immunoglobulin generally comprises two constant regions, CH2 and CH3.

As used in the art, "Fc receptor" and "FcR" describe a receptor that binds to the Fc region of an antibody. The preferred FcR is a native sequence human FcR. Moreover, a preferred FcR is one which binds an IgG antibody (a gamma receptor) and includes receptors of the FcγRI, FcγRII, and FcγRIII subclasses, including allelic variants and alternatively spliced forms of these receptors. FcγRII receptors include FcγRIIA (an "activating receptor") and FcγRIIB (an "inhibiting receptor"), which have similar amino acid sequences that differ primarily in the cytoplasmic domains thereof. FcRs are reviewed in Ravetch and Kinet, Ann. Rev. Immunol., 9:457-92, 1991; Capel et al., Immunomethods, 4:25-34, 1994; and de Haas et al., J. Lab. Clin. Med., 126:330-41, 1995. "FcR" also includes the neonatal receptor, FcRn, which is responsible for the transfer of maternal IgGs to the fetus (Guyer et al., J. Immunol., 117:587, 1976; and Kim et al., J. Immunol., 24:249, 1994).

The term "compete", as used herein with regard to an antibody, means that a first antibody, or an antigen binding fragment (or portion) thereof, binds to an epitope in a manner sufficiently similar to the binding of a second antibody, or an antigen binding portion thereof, such that the result of binding of the first antibody with its cognate epitope is detectably decreased in the presence of the second antibody compared to the binding of the first antibody in the absence of the second antibody. The alternative, where the binding of the second antibody to its epitope is also detectably decreased in the presence of the first antibody, can, but need not be the case. That is, a first antibody can inhibit the binding of a second antibody to its epitope without that second antibody inhibiting the binding of the first antibody to its respective epitope. However, where each antibody detectably inhibits the binding of the other antibody with its cognate epitope or ligand, whether to the same, greater, or lesser extent, the antibodies are said to "cross-compete" with each other for binding of their respective epitope(s).

Both competing and cross-competing antibodies are encompassed by the present invention. Regardless of the mechanism by which such competition or cross-competition occurs (e.g., steric hindrance, conformational change, or binding to a common epitope, or portion thereof), the skilled artisan would appreciate, based upon  
5 the teachings provided herein, that such competing and/or cross-competing antibodies are encompassed and can be useful for the methods disclosed herein.

A “functional Fc region” possesses at least one effector function of a native sequence Fc region. Exemplary “effector functions” include C1q binding; complement dependent cytotoxicity; Fc receptor binding; antibody-dependent cell-mediated  
10 cytotoxicity; phagocytosis; down-regulation of cell surface receptors (e.g. B cell receptor), etc. Such effector functions generally require the Fc region to be combined with a binding domain (e.g. an antibody variable domain) and can be assessed using various assays known in the art for evaluating such antibody effector functions.

A “native sequence Fc region” comprises an amino acid sequence identical to the  
15 amino acid sequence of an Fc region found in nature. A “variant Fc region” comprises an amino acid sequence which differs from that of a native sequence Fc region by virtue of at least one amino acid modification, yet retains at least one effector function of the native sequence Fc region. In some embodiments, the variant Fc region has at least one amino acid substitution compared to a native sequence Fc region or to the Fc  
20 region of a parent polypeptide, e.g. from about one to about ten amino acid substitutions, and preferably, from about one to about five amino acid substitutions in a native sequence Fc region or in the Fc region of the parent polypeptide. The variant Fc region herein will preferably possess at least about 80% sequence identity with a native sequence Fc region and/or with an Fc region of a parent polypeptide, and most  
25 preferably, at least about 90% sequence identity therewith, more preferably, at least about 95%, at least about 96%, at least about 97%, at least about 98%, at least about 99% sequence identity therewith.

The term “effector function” refers to the biological activities attributable to the Fc region of an antibody. Examples of antibody effector functions include, but are not  
30 limited to, antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), Fc receptor binding, complement dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), phagocytosis, C1q binding, and down regulation of cell surface receptors (e.g., B cell receptor; BCR). See, e.g., U.S. Pat No.

6,737,056. Such effector functions generally require the Fc region to be combined with a binding domain (e.g., an antibody variable domain) and can be assessed using various assays known in the art for evaluating such antibody effector functions. An exemplary measurement of effector function is through Fcγ3 and/or C1q binding.

5           As used herein “antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity” or “ADCC” refers to a cell-mediated reaction in which nonspecific cytotoxic cells that express Fc receptors (FcRs) (e.g. natural killer (NK) cells, neutrophils, and macrophages) recognize bound antibody on a target cell and subsequently cause lysis of the target cell. ADCC activity of a molecule of interest can be assessed using an *in vitro* ADCC assay, such as that  
10       described in U.S. Patent No. 5,500,362 or 5,821,337. Useful effector cells for such assays include peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC) and NK cells. Alternatively, or additionally, ADCC activity of the molecule of interest may be assessed *in vivo*, e.g., in an animal model such as that disclosed in Clynes et al., 1998, *PNAS (USA)*, 95:652-656.

15           “Complement dependent cytotoxicity” or “CDC” refers to the lysing of a target in the presence of complement. The complement activation pathway is initiated by the binding of the first component of the complement system (C1q) to a molecule (e.g. an antibody) complexed with a cognate antigen. To assess complement activation, a CDC assay, e.g. as described in Gazzano-Santoro et al., *J. Immunol. Methods*, 202: 163  
20       (1996), may be performed.

          As used herein, “treatment” is an approach for obtaining beneficial or desired clinical results. For purposes of this invention, beneficial or desired clinical results include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following: reducing the proliferation of (or destroying) neoplastic or cancerous cells, inhibiting metastasis of neoplastic cells,  
25       shrinking or decreasing the size of Trop-2 expressing tumor, remission of a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), decreasing symptoms resulting from a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), increasing the quality of life of those suffering from a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), decreasing the dose of other medications required to treat a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), delaying the progression of  
30       a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), curing a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer), and/or prolong survival of patients having a Trop-2 associated disease (e.g., cancer).



“Ameliorating” means a lessening or improvement of one or more symptoms as compared to not administering a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate. “Ameliorating” also includes shortening or reduction in duration of a symptom.

As used herein, an “effective dosage” or “effective amount” of drug, compound, or pharmaceutical composition is an amount sufficient to effect any one or more beneficial or desired results. For prophylactic use, beneficial or desired results include eliminating or reducing the risk, lessening the severity, or delaying the outset of the disease, including biochemical, histological and/or behavioral symptoms of the disease, its complications and intermediate pathological phenotypes presenting during development of the disease. For therapeutic use, beneficial or desired results include clinical results such as reducing incidence or amelioration of one or more symptoms of various Trop-2 associated diseases or conditions (such as gastric, head and neck, lung, ovarian, and pancreatic cancers), decreasing the dose of other medications required to treat the disease, enhancing the effect of another medication, and/or delaying the progression of the Trop-2 associated disease of patients. An effective dosage can be administered in one or more administrations. For purposes of this invention, an effective dosage of drug, compound, or pharmaceutical composition is an amount sufficient to accomplish prophylactic or therapeutic treatment either directly or indirectly. As is understood in the clinical context, an effective dosage of a drug, compound, or pharmaceutical composition may or may not be achieved in conjunction with another drug, compound, or pharmaceutical composition. Thus, an “effective dosage” may be considered in the context of administering one or more therapeutic agents, and a single agent may be considered to be given in an effective amount if, in conjunction with one or more other agents, a desirable result may be or is achieved.

An “individual” or a “subject” is a mammal, more preferably, a human. Mammals also include, but are not limited to, farm animals, sport animals, pets, primates, horses, dogs, cats, mice and rats.

As used herein, “vector” means a construct, which is capable of delivering, and, preferably, expressing, one or more gene(s) or sequence(s) of interest in a host cell. Examples of vectors include, but are not limited to, viral vectors, naked DNA or RNA expression vectors, plasmid, cosmid or phage vectors, DNA or RNA expression vectors

associated with cationic condensing agents, DNA or RNA expression vectors encapsulated in liposomes, and certain eukaryotic cells, such as producer cells.

As used herein, "expression control sequence" means a nucleic acid sequence that directs transcription of a nucleic acid. An expression control sequence can be a promoter, such as a constitutive or an inducible promoter, or an enhancer. The expression control sequence is operably linked to the nucleic acid sequence to be transcribed.

As used herein, "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" or "pharmaceutical acceptable excipient" includes any material which, when combined with an active ingredient, allows the ingredient to retain biological activity and is non-reactive with the subject's immune system. Examples include, but are not limited to, any of the standard pharmaceutical carriers such as a phosphate buffered saline solution, water, emulsions such as oil/water emulsion, and various types of wetting agents. Preferred diluents for aerosol or parenteral administration are phosphate buffered saline (PBS) or normal (0.9%) saline. Compositions comprising such carriers are formulated by well known conventional methods (see, for example, Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, 18th edition, A. Gennaro, ed., Mack Publishing Co., Easton, PA, 1990; and Remington, The Science and Practice of Pharmacy 21st Ed. Mack Publishing, 2005).

The term "acyl donor glutamine-containing tag" or "glutamine tag" as used herein refers to a polypeptide or a protein containing one or more Gln residue(s) that acts as a transglutaminase amine acceptor. See, e.g., WO2012059882.

The term " $k_{on}$ ", as used herein, refers to the rate constant for association of an antibody to an antigen. Specifically, the rate constants ( $k_{on}$  and  $k_{off}$ ) and equilibrium dissociation constants are measured using Fab antibody fragments (i.e. monovalent) and Trop-2 proteins (e.g., Trop-2-Fc fusion protein).

The term " $k_{off}$ ", as used herein, refers to the rate constant for dissociation of an antibody from the antibody/antigen complex.

The term " $K_D$ ", as used herein, refers to the equilibrium dissociation constant of an antibody-antigen interaction.

Reference to "about" a value or parameter herein includes (and describes) embodiments that are directed to that value or parameter per se. For example,

description referring to "about X" includes description of "X." Numeric ranges are inclusive of the numbers defining the range.

It is understood that wherever embodiments are described herein with the language "comprising," otherwise analogous embodiments described in terms of  
5 "consisting of" and/or "consisting essentially of" are also provided.

Where aspects or embodiments of the invention are described in terms of a Markush group or other grouping of alternatives, the present invention encompasses not only the entire group listed as a whole, but each member of the group individually and all possible subgroups of the main group, but also the main group absent one or more of  
10 the group members. The present invention also envisages the explicit exclusion of one or more of any of the group members in the claimed invention.

Unless otherwise defined, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. In case of conflict, the present specification, including definitions, will  
15 control. Throughout this specification and claims, the word "comprise," or variations such as "comprises" or "comprising" will be understood to imply the inclusion of a stated integer or group of integers but not the exclusion of any other integer or group of integers. Unless otherwise required by context, singular terms shall include pluralities and plural terms shall include the singular.

20 Exemplary methods and materials are described herein, although methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein can also be used in the practice or testing of the present invention. The materials, methods, and examples are illustrative only and not intended to be limiting.

## 25 Trop-2 Antibodies and Methods of Making Thereof

The present invention provides an antibody that binds to Trop-2. In one aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to domain 3 (e.g., amino acid residues 153-206) and domain 4 (e.g., amino acid residues 209-273) of human Trop-2 (e.g., SEQ ID NO:27) with a  
30 monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of 6.5 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance. In another aspect, the invention provides an isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to domain 1 (e.g., amino

acid residues 27-70) of human Trop-2 (e.g., SEQ ID NO:27) with a binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 35 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

The antibodies and antibody conjugates of the invention are characterized by any one or more of the following characteristics: (a) bind to Trop-2; (b) decrease or downregulate the protein expression of Trop-2; (c) treat, prevent, ameliorate one or more symptoms of a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a subject (e.g., cancer, such as gastric, head and neck, lung, ovarian, or pancreatic cancer); (d) inhibit tumor growth or progression in a subject (who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor); (e) inhibit metastasis of Trop-2 expressing cancer cells in a subject (who has one or more Trop-2 expressing cancer cells); (f) induce regression (e.g., long-term regression) of a Trop-2 expressing tumor; (g) exert cytotoxic activity in Trop-2 expressing cells; (h) deactivate or downregulate the ERK1/2 MAPK pathway; and (i) block Trop-2 interaction with other yet to be identified factors.

The antibodies useful in the present invention can encompass monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies, antibody fragments (e.g., Fab, Fab', F(ab')<sub>2</sub>, Fv, Fc, etc.), chimeric antibodies, bispecific antibodies, heteroconjugate antibodies, single chain (ScFv), mutants thereof, fusion proteins comprising an antibody portion (e.g., a domain antibody), humanized antibodies, and any other modified configuration of the immunoglobulin molecule that comprises an antigen recognition site of the required specificity, including glycosylation variants of antibodies, amino acid sequence variants of antibodies, and covalently modified antibodies. The antibodies may be murine, rat, human, or any other origin (including chimeric or humanized antibodies).

In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody as described herein is a monoclonal antibody. For example, the Trop-2 antibody is a humanized monoclonal antibody or a chimeric monoclonal antibody.

In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a modified constant region, such as, for example without limitation, a constant region that has increased potential for provoking an immune response. For example, the constant region may be modified to have increased affinity to an Fc gamma receptor such as, e.g., FcγRI, FcγRIIA, or FcγIII.

In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a modified constant region, such as a constant region that is immunologically inert, that is, having a reduced potential for

provoking an immune response. In some embodiments, the constant region is modified as described in Eur. J. Immunol., 29:2613-2624, 1999; PCT Application No. PCT/GB99/01441; and/or UK Patent Application No. 98099518. The Fc can be human IgG1, human IgG2, human IgG3, or human IgG4. The Fc can be human IgG2  
5 containing the mutation A330P331 to S330S331 (IgG2Δa), in which the amino acid residues are numbered with reference to the wild type IgG2 sequence. Eur. J. Immunol., 29:2613-2624, 1999. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a constant region of IgG<sub>4</sub> comprising the following mutations (Armour et al., Molecular Immunology 40 585-593, 2003): E233F234L235 to P233V234A235 (IgG4Δc), in which  
10 the numbering is with reference to wild type IgG4. In yet another embodiment, the Fc is human IgG4 E233F234L235 to P233V234A235 with deletion G236 (IgG4Δb). In another embodiment, the Fc is any human IgG4 Fc (IgG4, IgG4Δb or IgG4Δc) containing hinge stabilizing mutation S228 to P228 (Aalberse et al., Immunology 105, 9-19, 2002). In another embodiment, the Fc can be aglycosylated Fc.

15 In some embodiments, the constant region is aglycosylated by mutating the oligosaccharide attachment residue (such as Asn297) and/or flanking residues that are part of the glycosylation recognition sequence in the constant region. In some embodiments, the constant region is aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation enzymatically. The constant region may be aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation  
20 enzymatically or by expression in a glycosylation deficient host cell.

One way of determining binding affinity of antibodies to Trop-2 is by measuring binding affinity of monofunctional Fab fragments of the antibody. To obtain monofunctional Fab fragments, an antibody (for example, IgG) can be cleaved with papain or expressed recombinantly. The affinity of a Trop-2 Fab fragment of an  
25 antibody can be determined by surface plasmon resonance (Biacore™3000™ surface plasmon resonance (SPR) system, Biacore™, INC, Piscataway NJ) equipped with pre-immobilized streptavidin sensor chips (SA) or anti-mouse Fc or anti-human Fc using HBS-EP running buffer (0.01M HEPES, pH 7.4, 0.15 NaCl, 3 mM EDTA, 0.005% v/v Surfactant P20). Biotinylated or Fc fusion human Trop-2 can be diluted into HBS-EP  
30 buffer to a concentration of less than 0.5 µg/mL and injected across the individual chip channels using variable contact times, to achieve two ranges of antigen density, either 50-200 response units (RU) for detailed kinetic studies or 800-1,000 RU for screening

assays. Regeneration studies have shown that 25 mM NaOH in 25% v/v ethanol effectively removes the bound Fab while keeping the activity of Trop-2 on the chip for over 200 injections. Typically, serial dilutions (spanning concentrations of 0.1-10x estimated  $K_D$ ) of purified Fab samples are injected for 1 min at 100  $\mu$ L/minute and dissociation times of up to 2 hours are allowed. The concentrations of the Fab proteins are determined by ELISA and/or SDS-PAGE electrophoresis using a Fab of known concentration (as determined by amino acid analysis) as a standard. Kinetic association rates ( $k_{on}$ ) and dissociation rates ( $k_{off}$ ) are obtained simultaneously by fitting the data globally to a 1:1 Langmuir binding model (Karlsson, R. Roos, H. Fagerstam, L. Petersson, B. (1994). *Methods Enzymology* 6. 99-110) using the BIAevaluation program. Equilibrium dissociation constant ( $K_D$ ) values are calculated as  $k_{off}/k_{on}$ . This protocol is suitable for use in determining binding affinity of an antibody to any Trop-2, including human Trop-2, Trop-2 of another mammal (such as mouse Trop-2, rat Trop-2, or primate Trop-2), as well as different forms of Trop-2 (e.g., glycosylated Trop-2). Binding affinity of an antibody is generally measured at 25°C, but can also be measured at 37°C.

The Trop-2 antibodies as described herein may be made by any method known in the art. For the production of hybridoma cell lines, the route and schedule of immunization of the host animal are generally in keeping with established and conventional techniques for antibody stimulation and production, as further described herein. General techniques for production of human and mouse antibodies are known in the art and/or are described herein.

It is contemplated that any mammalian subject including humans or antibody producing cells therefrom can be manipulated to serve as the basis for production of mammalian, including human and hybridoma cell lines. Typically, the host animal is inoculated intraperitoneally, intramuscularly, orally, subcutaneously, intraplantar, and/or intradermally with an amount of immunogen, including as described herein.

Hybridomas can be prepared from the lymphocytes and immortalized myeloma cells using the general somatic cell hybridization technique of Kohler, B. and Milstein, C., *Nature* 256:495-497, 1975 or as modified by Buck, D. W., et al., *In Vitro*, 18:377-381, 1982. Available myeloma lines, including but not limited to X63-Ag8.653 and those from the Salk Institute, Cell Distribution Center, San Diego, Calif., USA, may be used in the

hybridization. Generally, the technique involves fusing myeloma cells and lymphoid cells using a fusogen such as polyethylene glycol, or by electrical means well known to those skilled in the art. After the fusion, the cells are separated from the fusion medium and grown in a selective growth medium, such as hypoxanthine-aminopterin-thymidine (HAT) medium, to eliminate unhybridized parent cells. Any of the media described herein, supplemented with or without serum, can be used for culturing hybridomas that secrete monoclonal antibodies. As another alternative to the cell fusion technique, EBV immortalized B cells may be used to produce the Trop-2 monoclonal antibodies of the subject invention. The hybridomas are expanded and subcloned, if desired, and supernatants are assayed for anti-immunogen activity by conventional immunoassay procedures (e.g., radioimmunoassay, enzyme immunoassay, or fluorescence immunoassay).

Hybridomas that may be used as source of antibodies encompass all derivatives, progeny cells of the parent hybridomas that produce monoclonal antibodies specific for Trop-2, or a portion thereof.

Hybridomas that produce such antibodies may be grown *in vitro* or *in vivo* using known procedures. The monoclonal antibodies may be isolated from the culture media or body fluids, by conventional immunoglobulin purification procedures such as ammonium sulfate precipitation, gel electrophoresis, dialysis, chromatography, and ultrafiltration, if desired. Undesired activity, if present, can be removed, for example, by running the preparation over adsorbents made of the immunogen attached to a solid phase and eluting or releasing the desired antibodies off the immunogen. Immunization of a host animal with a human Trop-2, or a fragment containing the target amino acid sequence conjugated to a protein that is immunogenic in the species to be immunized, e.g., keyhole limpet hemocyanin, serum albumin, bovine thyroglobulin, or soybean trypsin inhibitor using a bifunctional or derivatizing agent, for example, maleimidobenzoyl sulfosuccinimide ester (conjugation through cysteine residues), N-hydroxysuccinimide (through lysine residues), glutaraldehyde, succinic anhydride,  $\text{SOCl}_2$ , or  $\text{R}^1\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{NR}$ , where R and  $\text{R}^1$  are different alkyl groups, can yield a population of antibodies (e.g., monoclonal antibodies).

If desired, the Trop-2 antibody (monoclonal or polyclonal) of interest may be sequenced and the polynucleotide sequence may then be cloned into a vector for

expression or propagation. The sequence encoding the antibody of interest may be maintained in vector in a host cell and the host cell can then be expanded and frozen for future use. Production of recombinant monoclonal antibodies in cell culture can be carried out through cloning of antibody genes from B cells by means known in the art.

5 See, e.g. Tiller et al., J. Immunol. Methods 329, 112, 2008; U.S. Pat. No. 7,314,622.

In an alternative, the polynucleotide sequence may be used for genetic manipulation to “humanize” the antibody or to improve the affinity, or other characteristics of the antibody. For example, the constant region may be engineered to more nearly resemble human constant regions to avoid immune response if the  
10 antibody is used in clinical trials and treatments in humans. It may be desirable to genetically manipulate the antibody sequence to obtain greater affinity to Trop-2 and greater efficacy in inhibiting Trop-2.

There are four general steps to humanize a monoclonal antibody. These are: (1) determining the nucleotide and predicted amino acid sequence of the starting antibody  
15 light and heavy variable domains (2) designing the humanized antibody, i.e., deciding which antibody framework region to use during the humanizing process (3) the actual humanizing methodologies/techniques and (4) the transfection and expression of the humanized antibody. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,816,567; 5,807,715; 5,866,692; 6,331,415; 5,530,101; 5,693,761; 5,693,762; 5,585,089; and 6,180,370.

20 A number of “humanized” antibody molecules comprising an antigen binding site derived from a non-human immunoglobulin have been described, including chimeric antibodies having rodent or modified rodent V regions and their associated CDRs fused to human constant regions. See, for example, Winter et al. Nature 349:293-299, 1991, Lobuglio et al. Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. USA 86:4220-4224, 1989, Shaw et al. J Immunol.  
25 138:4534-4538, 1987, and Brown et al. Cancer Res. 47:3577-3583, 1987. Other references describe rodent CDRs grafted into a human supporting framework region (FR) prior to fusion with an appropriate human antibody constant region. See, for example, Riechmann et al. Nature 332:323-327, 1988, Verhoeyen et al. Science 239:1534-1536, 1988, and Jones et al. Nature 321:522-525, 1986. Another reference  
30 describes rodent CDRs supported by recombinantly engineered rodent framework regions. See, for example, European Patent Publication No. 0519596. These “humanized” molecules are designed to minimize unwanted immunological response



toward rodent anti-human antibody molecules which limits the duration and effectiveness of therapeutic applications of those moieties in human recipients. For example, the antibody constant region can be engineered such that it is immunologically inert (e.g., does not trigger complement lysis). See, e.g. PCT Publication No. 5 PCT/GB99/01441; UK Patent Application No. 9809951.8. Other methods of humanizing antibodies that may also be utilized are disclosed by Daugherty et al., Nucl. Acids Res. 19:2471-2476, 1991, and in U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,180,377; 6,054,297; 5,997,867; 5,866,692; 6,210,671; and 6,350,861; and in PCT Publication No. WO 01/27160.

10 The general principles related to humanized antibodies discussed above are also applicable to customizing antibodies for use, for example, in dogs, cats, primate, equines and bovines. Further, one or more aspects of humanizing an antibody described herein may be combined, e.g., CDR grafting, framework mutation and CDR mutation.

15 In one variation, fully human antibodies may be obtained by using commercially available mice that have been engineered to express specific human immunoglobulin proteins. Transgenic animals that are designed to produce a more desirable (e.g., fully human antibodies) or more robust immune response may also be used for generation of humanized or human antibodies. Examples of such technology are Xenomouse™ from Abgenix, Inc. (Fremont, CA) and HuMAb-Mouse® and TC Mouse™ from Medarex, Inc. 20 (Princeton, NJ).

In an alternative, antibodies may be made recombinantly and expressed using any method known in the art. In another alternative, antibodies may be made recombinantly by phage display technology. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,565,332; 5,580,717; 5,733,743; and 6,265,150; and Winter et al., Annu. Rev. 25 Immunol. 12:433-455, 1994. Alternatively, the phage display technology (McCafferty et al., Nature 348:552-553, 1990) can be used to produce human antibodies and antibody fragments *in vitro*, from immunoglobulin variable (V) domain gene repertoires from unimmunized donors. According to this technique, antibody V domain genes are cloned in-frame into either a major or minor coat protein gene of a filamentous 30 bacteriophage, such as M13 or fd, and displayed as functional antibody fragments on the surface of the phage particle. Because the filamentous particle contains a single-stranded DNA copy of the phage genome, selections based on the functional properties

of the antibody also result in selection of the gene encoding the antibody exhibiting those properties. Thus, the phage mimics some of the properties of the B cell. Phage display can be performed in a variety of formats; for review see, e.g., Johnson, Kevin S. and Chiswell, David J., *Current Opinion in Structural Biology* 3:564-571, 1993. Several  
5 sources of V-gene segments can be used for phage display. Clackson et al., *Nature* 352:624-628, 1991, isolated a diverse array of anti-oxazolone antibodies from a small random combinatorial library of V genes derived from the spleens of immunized mice. A repertoire of V genes from unimmunized human donors can be constructed and antibodies to a diverse array of antigens (including self-antigens) can be isolated  
10 essentially following the techniques described by Mark et al., *J. Mol. Biol.* 222:581-597, 1991, or Griffith et al., *EMBO J.* 12:725-734, 1993. In a natural immune response, antibody genes accumulate mutations at a high rate (somatic hypermutation). Some of the changes introduced will confer higher affinity, and B cells displaying high-affinity surface immunoglobulin are preferentially replicated and differentiated during  
15 subsequent antigen challenge. This natural process can be mimicked by employing the technique known as "chain shuffling." (Marks et al., *Bio/Technol.* 10:779-783, 1992). In this method, the affinity of "primary" human antibodies obtained by phage display can be improved by sequentially replacing the heavy and light chain V region genes with repertoires of naturally occurring variants (repertoires) of V domain genes obtained from  
20 unimmunized donors. This technique allows the production of antibodies and antibody fragments with affinities in the pM-nM range. A strategy for making very large phage antibody repertoires (also known as "the mother-of-all libraries") has been described by Waterhouse et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.* 21:2265-2266, 1993. Gene shuffling can also be used to derive human antibodies from rodent antibodies, where the human antibody has  
25 similar affinities and specificities to the starting rodent antibody. According to this method, which is also referred to as "epitope imprinting", the heavy or light chain V domain gene of rodent antibodies obtained by phage display technique is replaced with a repertoire of human V domain genes, creating rodent-human chimeras. Selection on antigen results in isolation of human variable regions capable of restoring a functional  
30 antigen binding site, i.e., the epitope governs (imprints) the choice of partner. When the process is repeated in order to replace the remaining rodent V domain, a human antibody is obtained (see PCT Publication No. WO 93/06213). Unlike traditional

humanization of rodent antibodies by CDR grafting, this technique provides completely human antibodies, which have no framework or CDR residues of rodent origin.

Antibodies may be made recombinantly by first isolating the antibodies and antibody producing cells from host animals, obtaining the gene sequence, and using the  
5 gene sequence to express the antibody recombinantly in host cells (e.g., CHO cells). Another method which may be employed is to express the antibody sequence in plants (e.g., tobacco) or transgenic milk. Methods for expressing antibodies recombinantly in plants or milk have been disclosed. See, for example, Peeters, et al. Vaccine 19:2756, 2001; Lonberg, N. and D. Huszar Int. Rev. Immunol 13:65, 1995; and Pollock, et al., J  
10 Immunol Methods 231:147, 1999. Methods for making derivatives of antibodies, e.g., humanized, single chain, etc. are known in the art.

Immunoassays and flow cytometry sorting techniques such as fluorescence activated cell sorting (FACS) can also be employed to isolate antibodies that are specific for Trop-2.

15 The antibodies as described herein can be bound to many different carriers. Carriers can be active and/or inert. Examples of well-known carriers include polypropylene, polystyrene, polyethylene, dextran, nylon, amylases, glass, natural and modified celluloses, polyacrylamides, agaroses, and magnetite. The nature of the carrier can be either soluble or insoluble for purposes of the invention. Those skilled in  
20 the art will know of other suitable carriers for binding antibodies, or will be able to ascertain such, using routine experimentation. In some embodiments, the carrier comprises a moiety that targets the myocardium.

DNA encoding the monoclonal antibodies is readily isolated and sequenced using conventional procedures (e.g., by using oligonucleotide probes that are capable of  
25 binding specifically to genes encoding the heavy and light chains of the monoclonal antibodies). The hybridoma cells serve as a preferred source of such DNA. Once isolated, the DNA may be placed into expression vectors (such as expression vectors disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 87/04462), which are then transfected into host cells such as E. coli cells, simian COS cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cells, or  
30 myeloma cells that do not otherwise produce immunoglobulin protein, to obtain the synthesis of monoclonal antibodies in the recombinant host cells. See, e.g., PCT Publication No. WO 87/04462. The DNA also may be modified, for example, by

substituting the coding sequence for human heavy and light chain constant regions in place of the homologous murine sequences, Morrison et al., Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci. 81:6851, 1984, or by covalently joining to the immunoglobulin coding sequence all or part of the coding sequence for a non-immunoglobulin polypeptide. In that manner,  
5 “chimeric” or “hybrid” antibodies are prepared that have the binding specificity of a Trop-2 monoclonal antibody herein.

The Trop-2 antibodies as described herein can be identified or characterized using methods known in the art, whereby reduction of Trop-2 expression levels is detected and/or measured. In some embodiments, a Trop-2 antibody is identified by  
10 incubating a candidate agent with Trop-2 and monitoring binding and/or attendant reduction of Trop-2 expression levels. The binding assay may be performed with purified Trop-2 polypeptide(s), or with cells naturally expressing, or transfected to express, Trop-2 polypeptide(s). In one embodiment, the binding assay is a competitive binding assay, where the ability of a candidate antibody to compete with a known Trop-2  
15 antibody for Trop-2 binding is evaluated. The assay may be performed in various formats, including the ELISA format.

Following initial identification, the activity of a candidate Trop-2 antibody can be further confirmed and refined by bioassays, known to test the targeted biological activities. Alternatively, bioassays can be used to screen candidates directly. Some of  
20 the methods for identifying and characterizing Trop-2 antibodies are described in detail in the Examples.

Trop-2 antibodies may be characterized using methods well known in the art. For example, one method is to identify the epitope to which it binds, or “epitope mapping.” There are many methods known in the art for mapping and characterizing the location of  
25 epitopes on proteins, including solving the crystal structure of an antibody-antigen complex, competition assays, gene fragment expression assays, and synthetic peptide-based assays, as described, for example, in Chapter 11 of Harlow and Lane, Using Antibodies, a Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York, 1999. In an additional example, epitope mapping can be used to  
30 determine the sequence to which a Trop-2 antibody binds. Epitope mapping is commercially available from various sources, for example, Pepscan Systems (Edelhertweg 15, 8219 PH Lelystad, The Netherlands). The epitope can be a linear

epitope, i.e., contained in a single stretch of amino acids, or a conformational epitope formed by a three-dimensional interaction of amino acids that may not necessarily be contained in a single stretch. Peptides of varying lengths (e.g., at least 4-6 amino acids long) can be isolated or synthesized (e.g., recombinantly) and used for binding assays with a Trop-2 antibody. In another example, the epitope to which the Trop-2 antibody binds can be determined in a systematic screening by using overlapping peptides derived from the Trop-2 sequence and determining binding by the Trop-2 antibody. According to the gene fragment expression assays, the open reading frame encoding Trop-2 is fragmented either randomly or by specific genetic constructions and the reactivity of the expressed fragments of Trop-2 with the antibody to be tested is determined. The gene fragments may, for example, be produced by PCR and then transcribed and translated into protein in vitro, in the presence of radioactive amino acids. The binding of the antibody to the radioactively labeled Trop-2 fragments is then determined by immunoprecipitation and gel electrophoresis. Certain epitopes can also be identified by using large libraries of random peptide sequences displayed on the surface of phage particles (phage libraries). Alternatively, a defined library of overlapping peptide fragments can be tested for binding to the test antibody in simple binding assays. In an additional example, mutagenesis of an antigen binding domain, domain swapping experiments and alanine scanning mutagenesis can be performed to identify residues required, sufficient, and/or necessary for epitope binding. For example, domain swapping experiments can be performed using a mutant Trop-2 in which various fragments of the Trop-2 protein have been replaced (swapped) with sequences from Trop-2 from another species (e.g., mouse), or a closely related, but antigenically distinct protein (e.g., Trop-1). By assessing binding of the antibody to the mutant Trop-2, the importance of the particular Trop-2 fragment to antibody binding can be assessed.

Yet another method which can be used to characterize a Trop-2 antibody is to use competition assays with other antibodies known to bind to the same antigen, i.e., various fragments on Trop-2, to determine if the Trop-2 antibody binds to the same epitope as other antibodies. Competition assays are well known to those of skill in the art.

An expression vector can be used to direct expression of a Trop-2 antibody. One skilled in the art is familiar with administration of expression vectors to obtain expression

of an exogenous protein in vivo. See, e.g., U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,436,908; 6,413,942; and 6,376,471. Administration of expression vectors includes local or systemic administration, including injection, oral administration, particle gun or catheterized administration, and topical administration. In another embodiment, the expression  
5 vector is administered directly to the sympathetic trunk or ganglion, or into a coronary artery, atrium, ventricle, or pericardium.

Targeted delivery of therapeutic compositions containing an expression vector, or subgenomic polynucleotides can also be used. Receptor-mediated DNA delivery techniques are described in, for example, Findeis et al., Trends Biotechnol., 1993,  
10 11:202; Chiou et al., Gene Therapeutics: Methods And Applications Of Direct Gene Transfer, J.A. Wolff, ed., 1994; Wu et al., J. Biol. Chem., 263:621, 1988; Wu et al., J. Biol. Chem., 269:542, 1994; Zenke et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 87:3655, 1990; and Wu et al., J. Biol. Chem., 266:338, 1991. Therapeutic compositions containing a polynucleotide are administered in a range of about 100 ng to about 200 mg of DNA for  
15 local administration in a gene therapy protocol. Concentration ranges of about 500 ng to about 50 mg, about 1 µg to about 2 mg, about 5 µg to about 500 µg, and about 20 µg to about 100 µg of DNA can also be used during a gene therapy protocol. The therapeutic polynucleotides and polypeptides can be delivered using gene delivery vehicles. The gene delivery vehicle can be of viral or non-viral origin (see generally,  
20 Jolly, Cancer Gene Therapy, 1:51, 1994; Kimura, Human Gene Therapy, 5:845, 1994; Connelly, Human Gene Therapy, 1995, 1:185; and Kaplitt, Nature Genetics, 6:148, 1994). Expression of such coding sequences can be induced using endogenous mammalian or heterologous promoters. Expression of the coding sequence can be either constitutive or regulated.

25 Viral-based vectors for delivery of a desired polynucleotide and expression in a desired cell are well known in the art. Exemplary viral-based vehicles include, but are not limited to, recombinant retroviruses (see, e.g., PCT Publication Nos. WO 90/07936; WO 94/03622; WO 93/25698; WO 93/25234; WO 93/11230; WO 93/10218; WO 91/02805; U.S. Pat. Nos. 5, 219,740 and 4,777,127; GB Pat. No. 2,200,651; and EP  
30 Pat. No. 0 345 242), alphavirus-based vectors (e.g., Sindbis virus vectors, Semliki forest virus (ATCC VR-67; ATCC VR-1247), Ross River virus (ATCC VR-373; ATCC VR-1246) and Venezuelan equine encephalitis virus (ATCC VR-923; ATCC VR-1250; ATCC VR

- 37 -

1249; ATCC VR-532)), and adeno-associated virus (AAV) vectors (see, e.g., PCT Publication Nos. WO 94/12649, WO 93/03769; WO 93/19191; WO 94/28938; WO 95/11984 and WO 95/00655). Administration of DNA linked to killed adenovirus as described in Curiel, Hum. Gene Ther., 1992, 3:147 can also be employed.

5 Non-viral delivery vehicles and methods can also be employed, including, but not limited to, polycationic condensed DNA linked or unlinked to killed adenovirus alone (see, e.g., Curiel, Hum. Gene Ther., 3:147, 1992); ligand-linked DNA (see, e.g., Wu, J. Biol. Chem., 264:16985, 1989); eukaryotic cell delivery vehicles cells (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 5,814,482; PCT Publication Nos. WO 95/07994; WO 96/17072; WO 95/30763; 10 and WO 97/42338) and nucleic charge neutralization or fusion with cell membranes. Naked DNA can also be employed. Exemplary naked DNA introduction methods are described in PCT Publication No. WO 90/11092 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,580,859. Liposomes that can act as gene delivery vehicles are described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,422,120; PCT Publication Nos. WO 95/13796; WO 94/23697; WO 91/14445; and 15 EP 0524968. Additional approaches are described in Philip, Mol. Cell Biol., 14:2411, 1994 and in Woffendin, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci., 91:1581, 1994.

In some embodiments, the invention encompasses compositions, including pharmaceutical compositions, comprising antibodies described herein or made by the methods and having the characteristics described herein. As used herein, compositions 20 comprise one or more antibodies that bind to Trop-2, and/or one or more polynucleotides comprising sequences encoding one or more these antibodies. These compositions may further comprise suitable excipients, such as pharmaceutically acceptable excipients including buffers, which are well known in the art.

Accordingly, the invention provides any of the following, or compositions 25 (including pharmaceutical compositions) comprising any of the following: (a) an antibody having a partial light chain sequence of

a)

DIVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQPPLLIYLASNLE  
SGVPARFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEEEDAATYYCQHSRELPTYFGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID

30 NO: 1),

DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHYQQKPGQPPKLLIYLASNLESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYYCQHSRELPTYFGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 3),

5 DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCRASKSVSTSLYSYMHYQQKPGQPPKLLIYLASNLESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYYCQHSRELPTYFGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 6),

DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCRASKSVSTSNYSYMHYQQKPGQPPKLLIYLASNLESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYYCQHSRELPTYFGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 7),

10 DILLTQSPAILSVSPGERVSFSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQRTNGSPRLLIKYASESISGIPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLSINSVESEDIADYYCQQSNSWPFTFGSGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 8),  
GVHSEIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRLLIYYASESISGIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLLEPEDFAVYYCQQSNSWPFTFGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 10), or

15 EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRLLIYYASESISGIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLLEPEDFAVYYCSQSFSWPFTFGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 12)

and/or (b) an antibody having a partial heavy chain sequence of

QVQLKESGPGLVAPSQSLITCTVSGFSLTSYGVHWVRQPPGKGLEWLGVIWTGGSTDYNSALMSRLSINKDNSKSQVFLKMNSLQTDDTAMYYCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGT  
20 SVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 2),

QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWIGVIWTGGSTDYNSALMSRVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 4),

25 QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWIGVIWTSGVTDYNSALMGRVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 5),

QVQLQQPGAELVRPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVKQRPGHGLEWIGNIYPSDSYSNYNQKFKDKATLTVDKSSSTAYMQVSSPTSEDSAVYYCTYGSSFDYWGQGTTVTVS  
S (SEQ ID NO: 9),

30 QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVRQAPGQGLEWMGNIYPSDSYSNYNQKFKDRVTMTRDTSTSTVYMELSSLRSEDYAVYYCARGSSFDYWGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 11), or



QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVRQAPGQGLEWMGNIFPSDS  
YSNYNKKFKDRVMTTRDTSTSTVYMESSLRSEDVAVYYCARGSGFDYWGGQGLTVTV  
SS (SEQ ID NO: 13).

5 Table 1

mAb	Light Chain	Heavy Chain
m7E6	DIVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCR <u><b>ASKSVSTSGYSYMH</b></u> WYQQKPG QPPKLLIY <u><b>LASNLES</b></u> GVPARFSG SGSGTDFTLNHPVEEEDAATYY <u><b>CQHSRELPTY</b></u> FGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 1)	QVQLKESGPGLVAPSQSLSITCTV <u><b>SGFSLT</b></u> <u><b>SYGV</b></u> HWVRQPPGKGLE WLG <u><b>VIWTGG</b></u> STDYNSALMSRLSIN KDNSKSQVFLKMNSLQTDDTAMY YCARD <u><b>DGDYDRYTMDY</b></u> WGQGTSV TVSS (SEQ ID NO: 2)
h7E6	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <u><b>RASKSVSTSGYSYMH</b></u> WYQQKP GQPPKLLIY <u><b>LASNLES</b></u> GVPDRFS GSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVY YC <u><b>CQHSRELPTY</b></u> FGQGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 3)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <u><b>SGGSISSY</b></u> GVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI <u><b>GVIWTGG</b></u> STDYNSALMSRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <u><b>RDGDYDRYTMDY</b></u> WGQGTLTVS S (SEQ ID NO: 4)
h7E6_ SVG	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <u><b>RASKSVSTSGYSYMH</b></u> WYQQKP GQPPKLLIY <u><b>LASNLES</b></u> GVPDRFS GSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVY YC <u><b>CQHSRELPTY</b></u> FGQGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 3)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <u><b>SGGSISSY</b></u> GVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI <u><b>GVIWTSGV</b></u> TDYNSALMGRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <u><b>RDGDYDRYTMDY</b></u> WGQGTLTVS S (SEQ ID NO: 5)
h7E6_ SVG1	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <u><b>RASKSVSTSGYSYMH</b></u> WYQQKP GQPPKLLIY <u><b>LASNLES</b></u> GVPDRFS GSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVY YC <u><b>CQHSRELPTY</b></u> FGQGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 3)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <u><b>SGGSISSY</b></u> GVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI <u><b>GVIWTSGV</b></u> TDYNSALMGRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <u><b>RX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>DYDRYTX<sub>3</sub>DY</b></u> WGQGTLTVTV SS wherein X <sub>1</sub> , X <sub>2</sub> , and X <sub>3</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids

mAb	Light Chain	Heavy Chain
		(SEQ ID NO: 84)
h7E6_ SVG2	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <b><u>RASKSVSTSGYSYMH</u></b> WYQQKP GQPPKLLIY <b><u>LASNLES</u></b> GVPDRFS GSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVY YC <b><u>QHSRELPYT</u></b> FGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 3)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <b><u>SGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI</u></b> <b><u>GVIWTS</u></b> GVTDYNSALMGRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <b><u>RX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>DYDRYTX<sub>3</sub>DY</u></b> WGQGTLLTV SS wherein X <sub>1</sub> and X <sub>2</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids; X <sub>3</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 85)
h7E6_ SVGL	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <b><u>RASKSVSTSLYSYMH</u></b> WYQQKPG QPPKLLIY <b><u>LASNLES</u></b> GVPDRFSG SGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYY <b><u>CQHSRELPYT</u></b> FGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 6)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <b><u>SGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI</u></b> <b><u>GVIWTS</u></b> GVTDYNSALMGRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <b><u>RDGDYDRYTMDY</u></b> WGQGTLLTVS S (SEQ ID NO: 5)
h7E6_ SVGN	DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINC <b><u>RASKSVSTSNYSYMH</u></b> WYQQKP GQPPKLLIY <b><u>LASNLES</u></b> GVPDRFS GSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVY YC <b><u>QHSRELPYT</u></b> FGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 7)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTV <b><u>SGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWI</u></b> <b><u>GVIWTS</u></b> GVTDYNSALMGRVTISVD TSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA <b><u>RDGDYDRYTMDY</u></b> WGQGTLLTVS S (SEQ ID NO: 5)
m6G11	DILLTQSPAILSVPGERVSFSC <b><u>R</u></b> <b><u>ASQTIGTSIH</u></b> WYQQRTNGSPRLLI <b><u>KYASESIS</u></b> GIPSRFSGSGSGTDF TLSINSVESEDIADYYC <b><u>QQSNSW</u></b> <b><u>PFT</u></b> FGSGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 8)	QVQLQQPGAELVRPGASVKLSCK <b><u>ASGYTFTSY</u></b> WINWVKQRPGHGLE WIGNI <b><u>YPSDSYS</u></b> SNYNQKF <del>K</del> DKATL TVDKSSSTAYMQVSSPTSEDSAV YYCTY <b><u>GSSFDY</u></b> WGQGTTTVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 9)
h6G11	EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSC <b><u>R</u></b>	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCK

mAb	Light Chain	Heavy Chain
	<u><b>ASQTIGTSIH</b></u> WYQQKPGQAPRLL I <u><b>YASESIS</b></u> GIPARFSGSGSGTDF TLTISSLEPEDFAVYYC <u><b>QQSNSW</b></u> <u><b>PFT</b></u> FGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 10)	ASGYT <u><b>FTSY</b></u> WINWVRQAPGQGLE WMGN <u><b>IYPSDS</b></u> YSNYNQKFKDRVT MTRDTSTSTVYMELSSLRSEDTAV YYCARG <u><b>GSSFDY</b></u> WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 11)
H6G11 _FKG_ SF	EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSC <u><b>R</b></u> <u><b>ASQTIGTSIH</b></u> WYQQKPGQAPRLL I <u><b>YASESIS</b></u> GIPARFSGSGSGTDF TLTISSLEPEDFAVYYC <u><b>SQSFSW</b></u> <u><b>PFT</b></u> FGQGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 12)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCK ASGYT <u><b>FTSY</b></u> WINWVRQAPGQGLE WMGN <u><b>IFPSDS</b></u> YSNYNKKFKDRVT MTRDTSTSTVYMELSSLRSEDTAV YYCARG <u><b>GSGFDY</b></u> WGQGTLVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 13)

In Table 1, the underlined sequences are CDR sequences according to Kabat and in bold according to Chothia.

The invention also provides CDR portions of antibodies to Trop-2 (including  
5 Chothia, Kabat CDRs, and CDR contact regions). Determination of CDR regions is well within the skill of the art. It is understood that in some embodiments, CDRs can be a combination of the Kabat and Chothia CDR (also termed "combined CRs" or "extended CDRs"). In some embodiments, the CDRs are the Kabat CDRs. In other embodiments, the CDRs are the Chothia CDRs. In other words, in embodiments with more than one  
10 CDR, the CDRs may be any of Kabat, Chothia, combination CDRs, or combinations thereof. Table 2 provides examples of CDR sequences provided herein.

Table 2

Heavy Chain			
mAb	CDRH1	CDRH2	CDRH3
m7E6	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GFSLTSY (SEQ ID NO: 31) (Chothia); GFSLTSYGVH (SEQ	VIWTGGSTDYNSALMS (SEQ ID NO: 33) (Kabat) WTGGS (SEQ ID NO: 34) (Chothia)	DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35)

	ID NO: 32) (extended)		
h7E6	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTGGSTDYNSALMS (SEQ ID NO: 33) (Kabat) WTGGS (SEQ ID NO: 34) (Chothia)	DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35)
h7E6_ SVG	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35)
h7E6_ SVG1	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	$X_1X_2DYDRYTX_3D$ Y wherein $X_1$ , $X_2$ , and $X_3$ are any naturally occurring amino acids (SEQ ID NO: 86)
h7E6_ SVG2	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	$X_1X_2DYDRYTX_3D$ Y wherein $X_1$ and $X_2$ are any naturally occurring amino acids; wherein $X_3$ is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 87)
h7E6_	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG	DYDRYTX <sub>1</sub> DY

SVG3	30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	(SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	wherein X <sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid; (SEQ ID NO: 83)
h7E6_ SVG4	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DYDRYTX <sub>1</sub> DY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 82)
h7E6_ SVG5	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	LGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 103)
h7E6_ SVG6	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	YGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 104)
h7E6_ SVG7	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	FGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 105)

	ID NO: 37) (extended)		
h7E6_ SVG8	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	HGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 106)
h7E6_ SVG9	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	AGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 107)
h7E6_ SVG10	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	TGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 108)
h7E6_ SVG11	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	SGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 109)
h7E6_ SVG12	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat);	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat)	IGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 110)

	GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	
h7E6_ SVG13	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	RGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 111)
h7E6_ SVG14	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	VGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 112)
h7E6_ SVG15	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	WGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 113)
h7E6_ SVG16	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	QGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 114)

	(extended)		
h7E6_ SVG17	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	GGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 115)
h7E6_ SVG18	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	KGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 116)
h7E6_ SVG19	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DSDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 117)
h7E6_ SVG20	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DKDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 118)
h7E6_ SVG21	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DHDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 119)



	NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	(Chothia)	
h7E6_ SVG22	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DADYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 120)
h7E6_ SVG23	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DFDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 121)
h7E6_ SVG24	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DTDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 122)
h7E6_ SVG25	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DRDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 123)

h7E6_ SVG26	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DVDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 124)
h7E6_ SVG27	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DQDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 125)
h7E6_ SVG28	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DLDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 126)
h7E6_ SVG29	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DYDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 127)
h7E6_ SVG30	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia);	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DEDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 128)

	GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)		
h7E6_SVG31	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DNDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 129)
h7E6_SVG32	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DWDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 130)
h7E6_SVGL	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35)
h7E6_SVGL1	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DSDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 117)
h7E6_	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO: 39) (Chothia)	DKDYDRYTMDY

SVGL2	30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	(SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	(SEQ ID NO: 118)
h7E6_ SVGL3	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DADYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 120)
h7E6_ SVGL4	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DLDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 126)
h7E6_ SVGL5	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37) (extended)	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DEDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 128)
h7E6_ SVGN	SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30) (Kabat); GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36) (Chothia); GGSISSYGVH (SEQ	VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) (Kabat) WTSGV (SEQ ID NO:39) (Chothia)	DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35)

	ID NO: 37) (extended)		
h7E6 Heavy Chain Conse nsus	GX <sub>1</sub> SX <sub>2</sub> X <sub>3</sub> SY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is F or G; X <sub>2</sub> is L or I; X <sub>3</sub> is T or S (SEQ ID NO: 76) (Chothia); GX <sub>1</sub> SX <sub>2</sub> X <sub>3</sub> SYGVH wherein X <sub>1</sub> is F or G; X <sub>2</sub> is L or I; X <sub>3</sub> is T or S (SEQ ID NO: 77)	VIWTX <sub>1</sub> GX <sub>2</sub> TDYNSALMX <sub>3</sub> wherein X <sub>1</sub> is G or S; X <sub>2</sub> is S or V; X <sub>3</sub> is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 49) (Kabat) WTX <sub>1</sub> GX <sub>2</sub> wherein X <sub>1</sub> is G or S; X <sub>2</sub> is S or V (SEQ ID NO: 50) (Chothia)	X <sub>1</sub> X <sub>2</sub> DYDRYTX <sub>3</sub> D Y wherein X <sub>1</sub> , X <sub>2</sub> , and X <sub>3</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids (SEQ ID NO: 86) X <sub>1</sub> X <sub>2</sub> DYDRYTX <sub>3</sub> D Y wherein X <sub>1</sub> and X <sub>2</sub> , are any naturally occurring amino acids; wherein X <sub>3</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 87) DYDRYTX <sub>1</sub> DY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid; (SEQ ID NO: 83) DYDRYTX <sub>1</sub> DY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 82)
m6G11	SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40) (Kabat); GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41) (Chothia); GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42) (extended)	NIYPSDSYSNYNQKFKD (SEQ ID NO: 43) (Kabat) YPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 44) (Chothia)	GSSFDY (SEQ ID NO: 45)
h6G11	SYWIN (SEQ ID NO:	NIYPSDSYSNYNQKFKD	GSSFDY (SEQ ID

	40) (Kabat); GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41) (Chothia); GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42) (extended)	(SEQ ID NO: 43) (Kabat) YPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 44) (Chothia)	NO: 45)
h6G11_FKG_SF	SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40) (Kabat); GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41) (Chothia); GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42) (extended)	NIFPSDSYSNYNKKFKD (SEQ ID NO: 46) (Kabat) FPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 47) (Chothia)	GSGFDY (SEQ ID NO: 48)
h6G11 Heavy Chain consensus		NIX <sub>1</sub> PSDSYSNYNX <sub>2</sub> KFKD wherein X <sub>1</sub> is Y or F; X <sub>2</sub> is Q or K (SEQ ID NO: 51) (Kabat) X <sub>1</sub> PSDSY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is Y or F (SEQ ID NO: 52) (Chothia)	GSX <sub>1</sub> FDY wherein X <sub>1</sub> is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 53)
<b>Light Chain</b>			
<b>mAb</b>	<b>CDRL1</b>	<b>CDRL2</b>	<b>CDRL3</b>
m7E6	RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54)	LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55)	QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56)
h7E6	RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54)	LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55)	QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56)
h7E6_SVG (including h7E6_SVG1 through h)	RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54)	LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55)	QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56)

h7E6_ SVG32			
h7E6_ SVGL (includi ng h7E6_ SVGL1 throug h h7E6_ SVGL5	RASKSVSTSLYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 57)	LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55)	QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56)
h7E6_ SVGN	RASKSVSTSNYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 58)	LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55)	QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56)
h7E6 Light Chain Conse nsus	RASKSVSTSX <sub>1</sub> YSYMH wherein X <sub>1</sub> is G, L, or N (SEQ ID NO: 63)		
m6G11	RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59)	YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60)	QQSNSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 61)
h6G11	RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59)	YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60)	QQSNSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 61)
h6G11 _FKG_ SF	RASQTIGTSIH (SEQ ID NO: 59)	YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60)	SQSFSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 62)
h6G11 Light Chain consen sus			X <sub>1</sub> QX <sub>2</sub> SWPFT wherein X <sub>1</sub> is Q or S; X <sub>2</sub> is N or F (SEQ ID NO:64)

- 54 -

In some embodiments, the present invention provides an antibody that binds to Trop-2 and competes with the antibody as described herein, such as m7E6, h7E6, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6\_SVGN, m6G11, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF. In some embodiments, the antibody competes the binding of Trop-2 with antibody h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6\_SVGN, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF. In some

embodiments, the antibody competes the binding of Trop-2 with antibody h7E6\_SVG and has a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about any of or less than about any of 6.5 nM, 6.0 nM, 5.5 nM, 5.0 nM, 4.5 nM, 4.0 nM, 3.5 nM, 3.0 nM, 2.5 nM, 2.0 nM, 1.5 nM, 1.0 nM, 0.5 nM, or 0.25 nM as measured by surface plasmon resonance. In some embodiments, the antibody competes with the binding of Trop-2 with antibody h7E6 and has a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about any of or less than about any of 30 nM, 25 nM, 22 nM, 20 nM, 15 nM, or 10 nM. In some embodiments, the competing antibody does not comprise a heavy chain variable region of the sequence QVQLKESGPGLVAPSQSL SITCTVSGFSLTSYGVHWVRQPPGKGLEWLGVIWTGGST DYN SALSRLSINKDNSKSQVFLKMNSLQTDDTAMY YCARDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGT SVTVSS (SEQ ID NO: 2) and a light chain variable region of the sequence DIVLTQSPASLAVSLGQRATISCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQP PKLLIY LASNLE SGV PARFSGSGSGTDFTLNIHPVEEEDAATYYCQHSREL PYTFGGGTKLEIK (SEQ ID NO: 1). In some embodiments, the competing antibody is not antibody AR47A6.4.2, AR52A301.5, AR36A36.11.1, BR110 or RS7.

In some embodiments, the present invention provides an antibody or an antigen binding fragment, which specifically bind to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises a VH region comprising a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 5, 84, or 85; and/or a VL region



- 55 -

comprising a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 3. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence DIVMTQSPDSLAVSLGERATINCRASKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQPPLLIYLASNL ESGVPDRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISLQAEDVAVYYCQHSRELPYTFGQGTKLEIKRTVAAP

5 SVFIFPPSDEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKD STYLSLSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC (SEQ ID NO: 66) and a heavy chain comprising the sequence QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSLTCTVSGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLEWIGVIWTSGVTD YNSALMGRVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCARDGDYDRYTM DYWGQGT

10 TVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPC PAPELLGGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNA KTKPREEQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTISKAKGQPRE PQVYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTPPVLDSDGS

15 FFLYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNV FSCSV MHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK (SEQ ID NO: 65). In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence SEQ ID NO: 66 and a heavy chain comprising the sequence SEQ ID NO: 101 or 102.

In some embodiments, the present invention provides an antibody or an antigen binding fragment, which specifically bind to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises a

20 VH region comprising a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 13; and/or a VL region comprising a sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 12. In some embodiments, the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRLLIYYASESISGIPAR FSGSGSGTDFTLTISLLEPEDFAVYYCSQSFSWPFTFGQGTKLEIKRTVAAPSVFIFPPS

25 DEQLKSGTASVVCLLNNFYPREAKVQWKVDNALQSGNSQESVTEQDSKDSTYLSLSTLTLSKADYEKHKVYACEVTHQGLSSPVTKSFNRGEC (SEQ ID NO: 68) and a heavy chain comprising the sequence QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKVSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVRQAPGQGLEWMGNIFPSDS YSNYNKKFKDRVMTTRDTSTSTVYMESSLRSED TAVYYCARGSGFDYWGQGT

30 LVTVSSASTKGPSVFPLAPSSKSTSGGTAALGCLVKDYFPEPVTVSWNSGALTSGVHTFPAVLQSSGLYSLSSVVTVPSSSLGTQTYICNVNHKPSNTKVDKKVEPKSCDKTHTCPPCPAPELLGGPSVFLFPPKPKDTLMISRTPEVTCVVDVSHEDPEVKFNWYVDGVEVHNAKT

- 56 -

KPREEQYNSTYRVVSVLTVLHQDWLNGKEYKCKVSNKALPAPIEKTISKAKGQPREPQ  
VYTLPPSREEMTKNQVSLTCLVKGFYPSDIAVEWESNGQPENNYKTTTPVLDSGDSFF  
LYSKLTVDKSRWQQGNVFCFSVMHEALHNHYTQKSLSLSPGK (SEQ ID NO: 67).

In some embodiments, the invention also provides CDR portions of antibodies to  
5 Trop-2 antibodies based on CDR contact regions. CDR contact regions are regions of  
an antibody that imbue specificity to the antibody for an antigen. In general, CDR  
contact regions include the residue positions in the CDRs and Vernier zones which are  
constrained in order to maintain proper loop structure for the antibody to bind a specific  
antigen. See, e.g., Makabe et al., J. Biol. Chem., 283:1156-1166, 2007. Determination  
10 of CDR contact regions is well within the skill of the art.

The binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of the Trop-2 antibody as described herein to Trop-2  
(such as human Trop-2) can be about 0.002 to about 200 nM. In some embodiments,  
the binding affinity is any of about 200 nM, about 100 nM, about 50 nM, about 45 nM,  
about 40 nM, about 35 nM, about 30 nM, about 25 nM, about 20 nM, about 15 nM,  
15 about 10 nM, about 8 nM, about 7.5 nM, about 7 nM, about 6.5 nM, about 6 nM, about  
5.5 nM, about 5 nM, about 4 nM, about 3 nM, about 2 nM, about 1 nM, about 500 pM,  
about 100 pM, about 60 pM, about 50 pM, about 20 pM, about 15 pM, about 10 pM,  
about 5 pM, or about 2 pM. In some embodiments, the binding affinity is less than any  
of about 250 nM, about 200 nM, about 100 nM, about 50 nM, about 30 nM, about 20  
20 nM, about 10 nM, about 7.5 nM, about 7 nM, about 6.5 nM, about 6 nM, about 5 nM,  
about 4.5 nM, about 4 nM, about 3.5 nM, about 3 nM, about 2.5 nM, about 2 nM, about  
1.5 nM, about 1 nM, about 500 pM, about 100 pM, about 50 pM, about 20 pM, about 10  
pM, about 5 pM, or about 2 pM.

In some embodiments, the binding affinity (e.g., monovalent antibody binding) of  
25 the antibodies as described herein is about 35 nM or less as measured by surface  
plasmon resonance. In some embodiments, the binding affinity (e.g., monovalent  
antibody binding) of the antibodies as described herein is about 6.5 nM or less as  
measured by surface plasmon resonance.

The invention also provides methods of making any of these antibodies. The  
30 antibodies of this invention can be made by procedures known in the art. The  
polypeptides can be produced by proteolytic or other degradation of the antibodies, by  
recombinant methods (i.e., single or fusion polypeptides) as described above or by

- 57 -

chemical synthesis. Polypeptides of the antibodies, especially shorter polypeptides up to about 50 amino acids, are conveniently made by chemical synthesis. Methods of chemical synthesis are known in the art and are commercially available. For example, an antibody could be produced by an automated polypeptide synthesizer employing the solid phase method. See also, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,807,715; 4,816,567; and 6,331,415.

In another alternative, the antibodies can be made recombinantly using procedures that are well known in the art. In one embodiment, a polynucleotide comprises a sequence encoding the heavy chain and/or the light chain variable regions of antibody m7E6, h7E6, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6\_SVGN, m6G11, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF. The sequence encoding the antibody of interest may be maintained in a vector in a host cell and the host cell can then be expanded and frozen for future use. Vectors (including expression vectors) and host cells are further described herein.

The invention also encompasses scFv of antibodies of this invention. Single chain variable region fragments are made by linking light and/or heavy chain variable regions by using a short linking peptide (Bird et al., Science 242:423-426, 1988). An example of a linking peptide is (GGGGS)<sub>3</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 80), which bridges approximately 3.5 nm between the carboxy terminus of one variable region and the amino terminus of the other variable region. Linkers of other sequences have been designed and used (Bird et al., 1988, supra). Linkers should be short, flexible polypeptides and preferably comprised of less than about 20 amino acid residues. Linkers can in turn be modified for additional functions, such as attachment of drugs or attachment to solid supports. The single chain variants can be produced either recombinantly or synthetically. For synthetic production of scFv, an automated synthesizer can be used. For recombinant production of scFv, a suitable plasmid

containing polynucleotide that encodes the scFv can be introduced into a suitable host cell, either eukaryotic, such as yeast, plant, insect or mammalian cells, or prokaryotic, such as *E. coli*. Polynucleotides encoding the scFv of interest can be made by routine manipulations such as ligation of polynucleotides. The resultant scFv can be isolated  
5 using standard protein purification techniques known in the art.

Other forms of single chain antibodies, such as diabodies or minibodies are also encompassed. Diabodies are bivalent, bispecific antibodies in which heavy chain variable (VH) and light chain variable (VL) domains are expressed on a single polypeptide chain, but using a linker that is too short to allow for pairing between the two  
10 domains on the same chain, thereby forcing the domains to pair with complementary domains of another chain and creating two antigen binding sites (see e.g., Holliger, P., et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:6444-6448, 1993; Poljak, R. J., et al., *Structure* 2:1121-1123, 1994). Minibody includes the VL and VH domains of a native antibody fused to the hinge region and CH3 domain of the immunoglobulin molecule. See, e.g.,  
15 US5,837,821.

For example, bispecific antibodies, monoclonal antibodies that have binding specificities for at least two different antigens, can be prepared using the antibodies disclosed herein. Methods for making bispecific antibodies are known in the art (see, e.g., Suresh et al., *Methods in Enzymology* 121:210, 1986). Traditionally, the  
20 recombinant production of bispecific antibodies was based on the coexpression of two immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pairs, with the two heavy chains having different specificities (Millstein and Cuello, *Nature* 305, 537-539, 1983).

According to one approach to making bispecific antibodies, antibody variable domains with the desired binding specificities (antibody-antigen combining sites) are  
25 fused to immunoglobulin constant region sequences. The fusion preferably is with an immunoglobulin heavy chain constant region, comprising at least part of the hinge, CH2 and CH3 regions. It is preferred to have the first heavy chain constant region (CH1), containing the site necessary for light chain binding, present in at least one of the fusions. DNAs encoding the immunoglobulin heavy chain fusions and, if desired, the  
30 immunoglobulin light chain, are inserted into separate expression vectors, and are cotransfected into a suitable host organism. This provides for great flexibility in adjusting the mutual proportions of the three polypeptide fragments in embodiments

when unequal ratios of the three polypeptide chains used in the construction provide the optimum yields. It is, however, possible to insert the coding sequences for two or all three polypeptide chains in one expression vector when the expression of at least two polypeptide chains in equal ratios results in high yields or when the ratios are of no particular significance.

In one approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain with a first binding specificity in one arm, and a hybrid immunoglobulin heavy chain-light chain pair (providing a second binding specificity) in the other arm. This asymmetric structure, with an immunoglobulin light chain in only one half of the bispecific molecule, facilitates the separation of the desired bispecific compound from unwanted immunoglobulin chain combinations. This approach is described in PCT Publication No. WO 94/04690.

In another approach, the bispecific antibodies are composed of amino acid modification in the first hinge region in one arm, and the substituted/replaced amino acid in the first hinge region has an opposite charge to the corresponding amino acid in the second hinge region in another arm. This approach is described in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2011/036419 (WO2011/143545).

In another approach, the bispecific antibodies can be generated using a glutamine-containing peptide tag engineered to the antibody directed to an epitope (e.g., Trop-2) in one arm and another peptide tag (e.g., a Lys-containing peptide tag or a reactive endogenous Lys) engineered to a second antibody directed to a second epitope in another arm in the presence of transglutaminase. This approach is described in International Patent Application No. PCT/IB2011/054899 (WO2012/059882).

Heteroconjugate antibodies, comprising two covalently joined antibodies, are also within the scope of the invention. Such antibodies have been used to target immune system cells to unwanted cells (U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980), and for treatment of HIV infection (PCT Publication Nos. WO 91/00360 and WO 92/200373; EP 03089). Heteroconjugate antibodies may be made using any convenient cross-linking methods. Suitable cross-linking agents and techniques are well known in the art, and are described in U.S. Pat. No. 4,676,980.

Chimeric or hybrid antibodies also may be prepared *in vitro* using known methods of synthetic protein chemistry, including those involving cross-linking agents. For

example, immunotoxins may be constructed using a disulfide exchange reaction or by forming a thioether bond. Examples of suitable reagents for this purpose include iminothiolate and methyl-4-mercaptobutyrimidate.

In the recombinant humanized antibodies, the Fc $\gamma$  portion can be modified to avoid interaction with Fc $\gamma$  receptor and the complement and immune systems. The techniques for preparation of such antibodies are described in WO 99/58572. For example, the constant region may be engineered to more resemble human constant regions to avoid immune response if the antibody is used in clinical trials and treatments in humans. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,997,867 and 5,866,692.

The invention encompasses modifications to the antibodies and polypeptides of the invention variants shown in Table 1, including functionally equivalent antibodies which do not significantly affect their properties and variants which have enhanced or decreased activity and/or affinity. For example, the amino acid sequence may be mutated to obtain an antibody with the desired binding affinity to Trop-2. Modification of polypeptides is routine practice in the art and need not be described in detail herein. Examples of modified polypeptides include polypeptides with conservative substitutions of amino acid residues, one or more deletions or additions of amino acids which do not significantly deleteriously change the functional activity, or which mature (enhance) the affinity of the polypeptide for its ligand, or use of chemical analogs.

Amino acid sequence insertions include amino- and/or carboxyl-terminal fusions ranging in length from one residue to polypeptides containing a hundred or more residues, as well as intrasequence insertions of single or multiple amino acid residues. Examples of terminal insertions include an antibody with an N-terminal methionyl residue or the antibody fused to an epitope tag. Other insertional variants of the antibody molecule include the fusion to the N- or C-terminus of the antibody of an enzyme or a polypeptide which increases the half-life of the antibody in the blood circulation.

Substitution variants have at least one amino acid residue in the antibody molecule removed and a different residue inserted in its place. The sites of greatest interest for substitutional mutagenesis include the hypervariable regions, but FR alterations are also contemplated. Conservative substitutions are shown in Table 3 under the heading of "conservative substitutions." If such substitutions result in a

change in biological activity, then more substantial changes, denominated "exemplary substitutions" in Table 3, or as further described below in reference to amino acid classes, may be introduced and the products screened.

5 Table 3: Amino Acid Substitutions

Original Residue (naturally occurring amino acid)	Conservative Substitutions	Exemplary Substitutions
Ala (A)	Val	Val; Leu; Ile
Arg (R)	Lys	Lys; Gln; Asn
Asn (N)	Gln	Gln; His; Asp, Lys; Arg
Asp (D)	Glu	Glu; Asn
Cys (C)	Ser	Ser; Ala
Gln (Q)	Asn	Asn; Glu
Glu (E)	Asp	Asp; Gln
Gly (G)	Ala	Ala
His (H)	Arg	Asn; Gln; Lys; Arg
Ile (I)	Leu	Leu; Val; Met; Ala; Phe; Norleucine
Leu (L)	Ile	Norleucine; Ile; Val; Met; Ala; Phe
Lys (K)	Arg	Arg; Gln; Asn
Met (M)	Leu	Leu; Phe; Ile
Phe (F)	Tyr	Leu; Val; Ile; Ala; Tyr
Pro (P)	Ala	Ala
Ser (S)	Thr	Thr
Thr (T)	Ser	Ser
Trp (W)	Tyr	Tyr; Phe
Tyr (Y)	Phe	Trp; Phe; Thr; Ser
Val (V)	Leu	Ile; Leu; Met; Phe; Ala; Norleucine

Substantial modifications in the biological properties of the antibody are accomplished by selecting substitutions that differ significantly in their effect on maintaining (a) the structure of the polypeptide backbone in the area of the substitution, for example, as a sheet or helical conformation, (b) the charge or hydrophobicity of the

molecule at the target site, or (c) the bulk of the side chain. Naturally occurring amino acid residues are divided into groups based on common side-chain properties:

- (1) Non-polar: Norleucine, Met, Ala, Val, Leu, Ile;
- (2) Polar without charge: Cys, Ser, Thr, Asn, Gln;
- 5 (3) Acidic (negatively charged): Asp, Glu;
- (4) Basic (positively charged): Lys, Arg;
- (5) Residues that influence chain orientation: Gly, Pro; and
- (6) Aromatic: Trp, Tyr, Phe, His.

10 Non-conservative substitutions are made by exchanging a member of one of these classes for another class.

Any cysteine residue not involved in maintaining the proper conformation of the antibody also may be substituted, generally with serine, to improve the oxidative stability of the molecule and prevent aberrant cross-linking. Conversely, cysteine bond(s) may be added to the antibody to improve its stability, particularly where the antibody is an antibody fragment such as an Fv fragment.

Amino acid modifications can range from changing or modifying one or more amino acids to complete redesign of a region, such as the variable region. Changes in the variable region can alter binding affinity and/or specificity. In some embodiments, no more than one to five conservative amino acid substitutions are made within a CDR domain. In other embodiments, no more than one to three conservative amino acid substitutions are made within a CDR domain. In still other embodiments, the CDR domain is CDR H3 and/or CDR L3.

Modifications also include glycosylated and nonglycosylated polypeptides, as well as polypeptides with other post-translational modifications, such as, for example, glycosylation with different sugars, acetylation, and phosphorylation. Antibodies are glycosylated at conserved positions in their constant regions (Jefferis and Lund, Chem. Immunol. 65:111-128, 1997; Wright and Morrison, TibTECH 15:26-32, 1997). The oligosaccharide side chains of the immunoglobulins affect the protein's function (Boyd et al., Mol. Immunol. 32:1311-1318, 1996; Wittwe and Howard, Biochem. 29:4175-4180, 1990) and the intramolecular interaction between portions of the glycoprotein, which can affect the conformation and presented three-dimensional surface of the glycoprotein (Jefferis and Lund, supra; Wyss and Wagner, Current Opin. Biotech. 7:409-416, 1996).



Oligosaccharides may also serve to target a given glycoprotein to certain molecules based upon specific recognition structures. Glycosylation of antibodies has also been reported to affect antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC). In particular, CHO cells with tetracycline-regulated expression of  $\beta(1,4)$ -N-acetylglucosaminyltransferase III (GnTIII), a glycosyltransferase catalyzing formation of bisecting GlcNAc, was reported to have improved ADCC activity (Umana et al., *Mature Biotech.* 17:176-180, 1999).

Glycosylation of antibodies is typically either N-linked or O-linked. N-linked refers to the attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the side chain of an asparagine residue. The tripeptide sequences asparagine-X-serine, asparagine-X-threonine, and asparagine-X-cysteine, where X is any amino acid except proline, are the recognition sequences for enzymatic attachment of the carbohydrate moiety to the asparagine side chain. Thus, the presence of either of these tripeptide sequences in a polypeptide creates a potential glycosylation site. O-linked glycosylation refers to the attachment of one of the sugars N-acetylgalactosamine, galactose, or xylose to a hydroxyamino acid, most commonly serine or threonine, although 5-hydroxyproline or 5-hydroxylysine may also be used.

Addition of glycosylation sites to the antibody is conveniently accomplished by altering the amino acid sequence such that it contains one or more of the above-described tripeptide sequences (for N-linked glycosylation sites). The alteration may also be made by the addition of, or substitution by, one or more serine or threonine residues to the sequence of the original antibody (for O-linked glycosylation sites).

The glycosylation pattern of antibodies may also be altered without altering the underlying nucleotide sequence. Glycosylation largely depends on the host cell used to express the antibody. Since the cell type used for expression of recombinant glycoproteins, e.g. antibodies, as potential therapeutics is rarely the native cell, variations in the glycosylation pattern of the antibodies can be expected (see, e.g. Hse et al., *J. Biol. Chem.* 272:9062-9070, 1997).

In addition to the choice of host cells, factors that affect glycosylation during recombinant production of antibodies include growth mode, media formulation, culture density, oxygenation, pH, purification schemes and the like. Various methods have been proposed to alter the glycosylation pattern achieved in a particular host organism including introducing or overexpressing certain enzymes involved in oligosaccharide

production (U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,047,335; 5,510,261 and 5,278,299). Glycosylation, or certain types of glycosylation, can be enzymatically removed from the glycoprotein, for example, using endoglycosidase H (Endo H), N-glycosidase F, endoglycosidase F1, endoglycosidase F2, endoglycosidase F3. In addition, the recombinant host cell can be genetically engineered to be defective in processing certain types of polysaccharides. These and similar techniques are well known in the art.

Other methods of modification include using coupling techniques known in the art, including, but not limited to, enzymatic means, oxidative substitution and chelation. Modifications can be used, for example, for attachment of labels for immunoassay. Modified polypeptides are made using established procedures in the art and can be screened using standard assays known in the art, some of which are described below and in the Examples.

In some embodiments of the invention, the antibody comprises a modified constant region, such as a constant region that has increased affinity to a human Fc gamma receptor, is immunologically inert or partially inert, e.g., does not trigger complement mediated lysis, does not stimulate antibody-dependent cell mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), or does not activate macrophages; or has reduced activities (compared to the unmodified antibody) in any one or more of the following: triggering complement mediated lysis, stimulating antibody-dependent cell mediated cytotoxicity (ADCC), or activating microglia. Different modifications of the constant region may be used to achieve optimal level and/or combination of effector functions. See, for example, Morgan et al., Immunology 86:319-324, 1995; Lund et al., J. Immunology 157:4963-9 157:4963-4969, 1996; Idusogie et al., J. Immunology 164:4178-4184, 2000; Tao et al., J. Immunology 143: 2595-2601, 1989; and Jefferis et al., Immunological Reviews 163:59-76, 1998. In some embodiments, the constant region is modified as described in Eur. J. Immunol., 1999, 29:2613-2624; PCT Application No. PCT/GB99/01441; and/or UK Patent Application No. 9809951.8. In other embodiments, the antibody comprises a human heavy chain IgG2 constant region comprising the following mutations: A330P331 to S330S331 (amino acid numbering with reference to the wild type IgG2 sequence). Eur. J. Immunol., 1999, 29:2613-2624. In still other embodiments, the constant region is aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation. In some embodiments, the constant region is aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation by

mutating the glycosylated amino acid residue or flanking residues that are part of the N-glycosylation recognition sequence in the constant region. For example, N-glycosylation site N297 may be mutated to A, Q, K, or H. See, Tao et al., J. Immunology 143: 2595-2601, 1989; and Jefferis et al., Immunological Reviews 163:59-76, 1998. In some  
5   embodiments, the constant region is aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation. The constant region may be aglycosylated for N-linked glycosylation enzymatically (such as removing carbohydrate by enzyme PNGase), or by expression in a glycosylation deficient host cell.

Other antibody modifications include antibodies that have been modified as  
10   described in PCT Publication No. WO 99/58572. These antibodies comprise, in addition to a binding domain directed at the target molecule, an effector domain having an amino acid sequence substantially homologous to all or part of a constant region of a human immunoglobulin heavy chain. These antibodies are capable of binding the target molecule without triggering significant complement dependent lysis, or cell-mediated  
15   destruction of the target. In some embodiments, the effector domain is capable of specifically binding FcRn and/or FcγRIIb. These are typically based on chimeric domains derived from two or more human immunoglobulin heavy chain C<sub>H</sub>2 domains. Antibodies modified in this manner are particularly suitable for use in chronic antibody therapy, to avoid inflammatory and other adverse reactions to conventional antibody  
20   therapy.

The invention includes affinity matured embodiments. For example, affinity matured antibodies can be produced by procedures known in the art (Marks et al., Bio/Technology, 10:779-783, 1992; Barbas et al., Proc Nat. Acad. Sci, USA 91:3809-3813, 1994; Schier et al., Gene, 169:147-155, 1995; Yelton et al., J. Immunol.,  
25   155:1994-2004, 1995; Jackson et al., J. Immunol., 154(7):3310-9, 1995, Hawkins et al., J. Mol. Biol., 226:889-896, 1992; and PCT Publication No. WO2004/058184).

The following methods may be used for adjusting the affinity of an antibody and for characterizing a CDR. One way of characterizing a CDR of an antibody and/or altering (such as improving) the binding affinity of a polypeptide, such as an antibody,  
30   termed "library scanning mutagenesis". Generally, library scanning mutagenesis works as follows. One or more amino acid positions in the CDR are replaced with two or more (such as 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, or 20) amino acids

using art recognized methods. This generates small libraries of clones (in some embodiments, one for every amino acid position that is analyzed), each with a complexity of two or more members (if two or more amino acids are substituted at every position). Generally, the library also includes a clone comprising the native (unsubstituted) amino acid. A small number of clones, e.g., about 20-80 clones (depending on the complexity of the library), from each library are screened for binding affinity to the target polypeptide (or other binding target), and candidates with increased, the same, decreased, or no binding are identified. Methods for determining binding affinity are well-known in the art. Binding affinity may be determined using Biacore™ surface plasmon resonance analysis, which detects differences in binding affinity of about 2-fold or greater. Biacore™ is particularly useful when the starting antibody already binds with a relatively high affinity, for example a  $K_D$  of about 10 nM or lower. Screening using Biacore™ surface plasmon resonance is described in the Examples, herein.

Binding affinity may be determined using Kinexa Biocensor, scintillation proximity assays, ELISA, ORIGEN immunoassay (IGEN), fluorescence quenching, fluorescence transfer, and/or yeast display. Binding affinity may also be screened using a suitable bioassay.

In some embodiments, every amino acid position in a CDR is replaced (in some embodiments, one at a time) with all 20 natural amino acids using art recognized mutagenesis methods (some of which are described herein). This generates small libraries of clones (in some embodiments, one for every amino acid position that is analyzed), each with a complexity of 20 members (if all 20 amino acids are substituted at every position).

In some embodiments, the library to be screened comprises substitutions in two or more positions, which may be in the same CDR or in two or more CDRs. Thus, the library may comprise substitutions in two or more positions in one CDR. The library may comprise substitution in two or more positions in two or more CDRs. The library may comprise substitution in 3, 4, 5, or more positions, said positions found in two, three, four, five or six CDRs. The substitution may be prepared using low redundancy codons. See, e.g., Table 2 of Balint et al., Gene 137(1):109-18, 1993.

- 67 -

The CDR may be CDRH3 and/or CDRL3. The CDR may be one or more of CDRL1, CDRL2, CDRL3, CDRH1, CDRH2, and/or CDRH3. The CDR may be a Kabat CDR, a Chothia CDR, or an extended CDR.

5 Candidates with improved binding may be sequenced, thereby identifying a CDR substitution mutant which results in improved affinity (also termed an "improved" substitution). Candidates that bind may also be sequenced, thereby identifying a CDR substitution which retains binding.

10 Multiple rounds of screening may be conducted. For example, candidates (each comprising an amino acid substitution at one or more position of one or more CDR) with improved binding are also useful for the design of a second library containing at least the original and substituted amino acid at each improved CDR position (i.e., amino acid position in the CDR at which a substitution mutant showed improved binding). Preparation, and screening or selection of this library is discussed further below.

15 Library scanning mutagenesis also provides a means for characterizing a CDR, in so far as the frequency of clones with improved binding, the same binding, decreased binding or no binding also provide information relating to the importance of each amino acid position for the stability of the antibody-antigen complex. For example, if a position of the CDR retains binding when changed to all 20 amino acids, that position is identified as a position that is unlikely to be required for antigen binding. Conversely, if  
20 a position of CDR retains binding in only a small percentage of substitutions, that position is identified as a position that is important to CDR function. Thus, the library scanning mutagenesis methods generate information regarding positions in the CDRs that can be changed to many different amino acids (including all 20 amino acids), and positions in the CDRs which cannot be changed or which can only be changed to a few  
25 amino acids.

Candidates with improved affinity may be combined in a second library, which includes the improved amino acid, the original amino acid at that position, and may further include additional substitutions at that position, depending on the complexity of the library that is desired, or permitted using the desired screening or selection method.  
30 In addition, if desired, adjacent amino acid position can be randomized to at least two or more amino acids. Randomization of adjacent amino acids may permit additional conformational flexibility in the mutant CDR, which may in turn, permit or facilitate the

introduction of a larger number of improving mutations. The library may also comprise substitution at positions that did not show improved affinity in the first round of screening.

5 The second library is screened or selected for library members with improved and/or altered binding affinity using any method known in the art, including screening using Biacore™ surface plasmon resonance analysis, and selection using any method known in the art for selection, including phage display, yeast display, and ribosome display.

10 The invention also encompasses fusion proteins comprising one or more fragments or regions from the antibodies of this invention. In one embodiment, a fusion polypeptide is provided that comprises at least 10 contiguous amino acids of the variable light chain region shown in SEQ ID NOs: 1, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, and 12 and/or at least 10 amino acids of the variable heavy chain region shown in SEQ ID NOs: 2, 4, 5, 9, 11, and 13. In other embodiments, a fusion polypeptide is provided that comprises at  
15 least about 10, at least about 15, at least about 20, at least about 25, or at least about 30 contiguous amino acids of the variable light chain region and/or at least about 10, at least about 15, at least about 20, at least about 25, or at least about 30 contiguous amino acids of the variable heavy chain region. In another embodiment, the fusion polypeptide comprises a light chain variable region and/or a heavy chain variable region,  
20 as shown in any of the sequence pairs selected from among SEQ ID NOs: 1 and 2, 3 and 4, 3 and 5, 6 and 5, 7 and 5, 8 and 9, 10 and 11, and 12 and 13. In another embodiment, the fusion polypeptide comprises one or more CDR(s). In still other embodiments, the fusion polypeptide comprises CDR H3 (VH CDR3) and/or CDR L3 (VL CDR3). For purposes of this invention, a fusion protein contains one or more  
25 antibodies and another amino acid sequence to which it is not attached in the native molecule, for example, a heterologous sequence or a homologous sequence from another region. Exemplary heterologous sequences include, but are not limited to a "tag" such as a FLAG tag or a 6His tag. Tags are well known in the art.

30 A fusion polypeptide can be created by methods known in the art, for example, synthetically or recombinantly. Typically, the fusion proteins of this invention are made by preparing an expressing a polynucleotide encoding them using recombinant methods

- 69 -

described herein, although they may also be prepared by other means known in the art, including, for example, chemical synthesis.

This invention also provides compositions comprising antibodies conjugated (for example, linked) to an agent that facilitate coupling to a solid support (such as biotin or avidin). For simplicity, reference will be made generally to antibodies with the understanding that these methods apply to any of the Trop-2 antibody embodiments described herein. Conjugation generally refers to linking these components as described herein. The linking (which is generally fixing these components in proximate association at least for administration) can be achieved in any number of ways. For example, a direct reaction between an agent and an antibody is possible when each possesses a substituent capable of reacting with the other. For example, a nucleophilic group, such as an amino or sulfhydryl group, on one may be capable of reacting with a carbonyl-containing group, such as an anhydride or an acid halide, or with an alkyl group containing a good leaving group (e.g., a halide) on the other.

The invention also provides isolated polynucleotides encoding the antibodies of the invention, and vectors and host cells comprising the polynucleotide.

Accordingly, the invention provides polynucleotides (or compositions, including pharmaceutical compositions), comprising polynucleotides encoding any of the following: the m7E6, h7E6, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6\_SVGN, m6G11, h6G11, h6G11\_FKG\_SF, or any fragment or part thereof having the ability to bind Trop-2.

In another aspect, the invention provides polynucleotides encoding any of the antibodies (including antibody fragments) and polypeptides described herein, such as antibodies and polypeptides having impaired effector function. Polynucleotides can be made and expressed by procedures known in the art.

In another aspect, the invention provides compositions (such as a pharmaceutical compositions) comprising any of the polynucleotides of the invention. In some embodiments, the composition comprises an expression vector comprising a polynucleotide encoding any of the antibodies described herein. In still other  
5     embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 15 and SEQ ID NO: 14 below:

*m7E6 heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTCCAACCTGCAGGAATCAGGTCCAGGCCTGGTGAAACCGTCTGAAACCCTGA  
GCCTGACATGCACCGTGAGCGGTGGTAGTATTAGCTCTTACGGCGTCCATTGGAT  
10     CCGTCAACCGCCTGGTAAAGGTCTGGAATGGATTGGCGTGATCTGGACCGGTGGT  
AGCACCGACTATAACAGCGCACTGATGAGCCGCGTGACCATCTCGGTAGACACGT  
CGAAAAACCAAGTTCAGCCTGAACTGAGCAGCGTGACCGCCGCGGATACCGCTGT  
TTATTACTGCGCACGCGACGGGGATTATGATCGCTACACCATGGATTATTGGGGCC  
AGGGTACCCTGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:15)

*m7E6 light chain variable region*

GACATTGTGCTGACACAGTCTCCTGCTTCCTTAGCTGTATCTCTGGGGCAGAGGGC  
CACCATCTCATGCAGGGCCAGCAAAAGTGTCAGTACATCTGGCTATAGTTATATGC  
ACTGGTACCAACAGAAACCAGGACAGCCACCCAACTCCTCATCTATCTTGCATCC  
AACCTAGAATCTGGGGTCCCTGCCAGGTTCAAGTGGCAGTGGGTCTGGGACAGACT  
20     TCACCCTCAACATCCATCCTGTGGAGGAGGAGGATGCTGCAACCTATTACTGTCAG  
CACAGTAGGGAGCTTCCGTACACGTTTCGGAGGGGGGACCAAGCTGGAGATCAAA  
(SEQ ID NO:14)

In other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 17 and SEQ ID NO: 16 below:

*h7E6 heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTCCAACCTGCAGGAATCAGGTCCAGGCCTGGTGAAACCGTCTGAAACCCTGA  
GCCTGACATGCACCGTGAGCGGTGGTAGTATTAGCTCTTACGGCGTCCATTGGAT  
CCGTCAACCGCCTGGTAAAGGTCTGGAATGGATTGGCGTGATCTGGACCGGTGGT  
AGCACCGACTATAACAGCGCACTGATGAGCCGCGTGACCATCTCGGTAGACACGT  
30     CGAAAAACCAAGTTCAGCCTGAACTGAGCAGCGTGACCGCCGCGGATACCGCTGT  
TTATTACTGCGCACGCGACGGGGATTATGATCGCTACACCATGGATTATTGGGGCC  
AGGGTACCCTGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:17)



- 71 -

*h7E6 light chain variable region*

GATATCGTAATGACCCAATCTCCGGATTTCGCTGGCGGTATCACTGGGCGAACGTG  
CCACGATTAAGTCCCGTGCAAGCAAATCAGTGTGACCTCCGGCTACAGCTATATG  
CACTGGTATCAACAGAAACCGGGCCAGCCGCCGAAACTGCTGATCTATCTGGCTA  
5 GCAACCTGGAGAGCGGTGTGCCTGATCGCTTTAGTGGCTCCGGTAGCGGTACCGA  
TTTCACGCTGACCATCAGCTCCCTGCAGGCAGAAGACGTGGCCGTGTATTATTGTC  
AGCACAGCCGTGAGCTGCCGTATACTTTTGGCCAGGGGACAAAACCTGGAAATCAA  
A (SEQ ID NO:16)

10 In still other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the  
polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 18 and SEQ ID NO: 16 below:

*h7E6\_SVG heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTCCAAGTGCAGGAATCAGGTCCAGGCCTGGTGAACCGTCTGAAACCCTGA  
GCCTGACATGCACCGTGAGCGGTGGTAGTATTAGCTCTTACGCGTCCATTGGATCC  
GTCAACCGCCTGGTAAAGGTCTGGAATGGATTGGCGTGATCTGGACCAGTGGTGT  
15 GACCGACTATAACAGCGCACTGATGGGCCGCGTGACCATCTCGGTAGACACGTCG  
AAAAACAGTTCAGCCTGAAACTGAGCAGCGTGACCGCCGCGGATACCGCTGTTT  
ATTACTGCGCACGCGACGGGGATTATGATCGCTACACCATGGATTATTGGGGCCA  
GGGTACCCTGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:18)

*h7E6\_SVG light chain variable region*

20 GATATCGTAATGACCCAATCTCCGGATTTCGCTGGCGGTATCACTGGGCGAACGTG  
CCACGATTAAGTCCCGTGCAAGCAAATCAGTGTGACCTCCGGCTACAGCTATATG  
CACTGGTATCAACAGAAACCGGGCCAGCCGCCGAAACTGCTGATCTATCTGGCTA  
GCAACCTGGAGAGCGGTGTGCCTGATCGCTTTAGTGGCTCCGGTAGCGGTACCGA  
TTTCACGCTGACCATCAGCTCCCTGCAGGCAGAAGACGTGGCCGTGTATTATTGTC  
25 AGCACAGCCGTGAGCTGCCGTATACTTTTGGCCAGGGGACAAAACCTGGAAATCAA  
A (SEQ ID NO:16)

In other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the  
polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 18 and SEQ ID NO: 19 below:

*h7E6\_SVGL heavy chain variable region*

30 CAGGTCCAAGTGCAGGAATCAGGTCCAGGCCTGGTGAACCGTCTGAAACCCTGA  
GCCTGACATGCACCGTGAGCGGTGGTAGTATTAGCTCTTACGCGTCCATTGGATCC  
GTCAACCGCCTGGTAAAGGTCTGGAATGGATTGGCGTGATCTGGACCAGTGGTGT

- 72 -

GACCGACTATAACAGCGCACTGATGGGCCGCGTGACCATCTCGGTAGACACGTCG  
 AAAAACCAGTTCAGCCTGAAACTGAGCAGCGTGACCGCCGCGGATACCGCTGTTT  
 ATTACTGCGCACGCGACGGGGATTATGATCGCTACACCATGGATTATTGGGGCCA  
 GGGTACCCTGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:18)

5 *h7E6\_SVGL light chain variable region*

GATATCGTAATGACCCAATCTCCGATTGCTGGCGGTATCACTGGGCGAACGTG  
 CCACGATTAAGTCCCGTGCAAGCAAATCAGTGTGCGACCTCCTTGTACAGCTATATG  
 CACTGGTATCAACAGAAACCGGGCCAGCCGCCGAAACTGCTGATCTATCTGGCTA  
 GCAACCTGGAGAGCGGTGTGCCTGATCGCTTTAGTGGCTCCGGTAGCGGTACCGA  
 10 TTTACGCTGACCATCAGCTCCCTGCAGGCAGAAGACGTGGCCGTGTATTATTGTC  
 AGCACAGCCGTGAGCTGCCGTATACTTTTGGCCAGGGGACAAAACCTGGAAATCAA  
 A (SEQ ID NO:19) (SEQ ID NO: 19).

In still other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 18 and SEQ ID NO: 20 below:

15 *h7E6\_SVGN heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTCCAAGTGCAGGAATCAGGTCCAGGCCTGGTGAAACCGTCTGAAACCCTGA  
 GCCTGACATGCACCGTGAGCGGTGGTAGTATTAGCTCTTACGCGTCCATTGGATCC  
 GTCAACCGCCTGGTAAAGGTCTGGAATGGATTGGCGTGATCTGGACCAGTGGTGT  
 GACCGACTATAACAGCGCACTGATGGGCCGCGTGACCATCTCGGTAGACACGTCG  
 20 AAAAACCAGTTCAGCCTGAAACTGAGCAGCGTGACCGCCGCGGATACCGCTGTTT  
 ATTACTGCGCACGCGACGGGGATTATGATCGCTACACCATGGATTATTGGGGCCA  
 GGGTACCCTGGTCACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO: 18)

*h7E6\_SVGN light chain variable region*

GATATCGTAATGACCCAATCTCCGATTGCTGGCGGTATCACTGGGCGAACGTG  
 25 CCACGATTAAGTCCCGTGCAAGCAAATCAGTGTGCGACCTCCAATTACAGCTATATG  
 CACTGGTATCAACAGAAACCGGGCCAGCCGCCGAAACTGCTGATCTATCTGGCTA  
 GCAACCTGGAGAGCGGTGTGCCTGATCGCTTTAGTGGCTCCGGTAGCGGTACCGA  
 TTTACGCTGACCATCAGCTCCCTGCAGGCAGAAGACGTGGCCGTGTATTATTGTC  
 AGCACAGCCGTGAGCTGCCGTATACTTTTGGCCAGGGGACAAAACCTGGAAATCAA  
 30 A (SEQ ID NO: 20)

In other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 25 and SEQ ID NO: 20 below:

- 73 -

*h6G11\_FKG\_SF heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTGCAGTTGGTTCAGAGCGGCGCGGAAGTCAAGAAACCCGGCGCCTCCGTG  
AAAGTGAGCTGCAAAGCGAGCGGCTACACCTTCACCAGTTATTGGATTAAGTGGGT  
GCGCCAGGCCCCAGGCCAGGGGCTGGAGTGGATGGGAAACATCTTCCCATCTGA  
5 CTCTTACAGCAACTATAATAAGAAATTTAAGGATCGCGTAACAATGACCCGTGACAC  
CAGCACCAGCACTGTTTACATGGAGCTGAGTTCTCTGCGTTCTGAAGATACCGCCG  
TGTAATACTGCGCACGCGGTTCCGGGTTGATTACTGGGGCCAGGGGACCCTGGT  
CACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:25)

*h6G11\_FKG\_SF light chain variable region*

10 GAGATCGTGCTGACCCAAAGTCCAGCCACCCTTTCCCTGTCTCCAGGCGAACGCG  
CAACCCTGAGCTGCCGCGCTTCTCAGACCATTGGTACCTCCATTCAATTGGTATCAG  
CAGAAGCCCGGCCAAGCCCCGCGTCTGCTGATCTATTACGCCTCAGAAAGTATTTT  
AGGCATCCCCGCTCGCTTCTCCGGCTCCGGCAGCGGAACCGACTTCACACTTACA  
ATCTCTAGTTTGGAGCCAGAAGACTTCGCCGTTTACTACTGTTTCGCAGTCTTTTAGC  
15 TGGCCATTTACCTTTGGCCAGGGCACGAAGCTGGAAATCAAG (SEQ ID NO:26)

In other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 22 and SEQ ID NO: 21 below:

*m6G11 heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTCCAAGTGCAGCAGCCTGGGGCTGAGCTGGTGAGGCCTGGGGCTTCAGTG  
20 AAGCTGTCCTGCAAGGCTTCTGGCTACACCTTCACCAGCTACTGGATAAACTGGGT  
GAAGCAGAGGCCTGGACATGGCCTTGAGTGGATCGGAAATATTTATCCTTCTGATA  
GTTATTCTAACTACAATCAAAAGTTCAAGGACAAGGCCACATTGACTGTAGACAAAT  
CCTCCAGCACAGCCTACATGCAGGTCAGCAGCCCGACATCTGAGGACTCTGCGGT  
CTATTACTGTACGTACGGTAGTAGCTTTGACTACTGGGGCCAAGGCACCACGGTCA  
25 CCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO:22)

*m6G11 light chain variable region*

GACATCTTGCTGACTCAGTCTCCAGCCATCCTGTCTGTGAGTCCAGGAGAAAGAGT  
CAGTTTCTCCTGCAGGGCCAGTCAGACCATTGGCACAAGCATACTGGTATCAGC  
AAAGAACAAATGGTTCTCCAAGGCTTCTCATAAAGTATGCTTCTGAGTCTATCTCTG  
30 GGATCCCTTCCAGGTTTAGTGGCAGTGGATCAGGGACAGATTTTACTCTTAGCATC  
AACAGTGTGGAGTCTGAAGATATTGCAGATTACTGTCAACAAAGTAATAGCTGG  
CCATTCACGTTTCGGCTCGGGGACCAAGCTGGAAATAAAA (SEQ ID NO:21)

- 74 -

In other embodiments, the composition comprises either or both of the polynucleotides shown in SEQ ID NO: 24 and SEQ ID NO: 23 below:

*h6G11 heavy chain variable region*

CAGGTGCAGTTGGTTCAGAGCGGCGCGGAAGTCAAGAAACCCGGCGCCTCCGTG  
 5 AAAGTGAGCTGCAAAGCGAGCGGCTACACCTTCACCAGTTATTGGATTA ACTGGGT  
 GCGCCAGGCCCCAGGCCAGGGGCTGGAGTGGATGGGAAACATCTACCCATCTGA  
 CTCTTACAGCAACTATAATCAGAAATTTAAGGATCGCGTAACAATGACCCGTGACAC  
 CAGCACCAGCACTGTTTACATGGAGCTGAGTTCTCTGCGTTCTGAAGATACCGCCG  
 TGTACTACTGCGCACGCGGTTCCAGTTTCGATTACTGGGGCCAGGGGACCCTGGT  
 10 CACCGTCTCCTCA (SEQ ID NO: 24)

*h6G11 light chain variable region*

GAGATCGTGCTGACCCAAAGTCCAGCCACCCTTTCCCTGTCTCCAGGCGAACGCG  
 CAACCCTGAGCTGCCGCGCTTCTCAGACCATTGGTACCTCCATTCA TTGGTATCAG  
 CAGAAGCCCGGCCAAGCCCCGCGTCTGCTGATCTATTACGCCTCAGAAAGTATTTT  
 15 AGGCATCCCCGCTCGCTTCTCCGGCTCCGGCAGCGGAACCGACTTCACACTTACA  
 ATCTCTAGTTTGGAGCCAGAAGACTTCGCCGTTTACTACTGTCAGCAGTCTAACAG  
 CTGGCCATTTACCTTTGGCCAGGGCACGAAGCTGGAAATCAAG (SEQ ID NO: 23)

Expression vectors, and administration of polynucleotide compositions are further described herein.

20 In another aspect, the invention provides a method of making any of the polynucleotides described herein.

Polynucleotides complementary to any such sequences are also encompassed by the present invention. Polynucleotides may be single-stranded (coding or antisense) or double-stranded, and may be DNA (genomic, cDNA or synthetic) or RNA molecules.  
 25 RNA molecules include HnRNA molecules, which contain introns and correspond to a DNA molecule in a one-to-one manner, and mRNA molecules, which do not contain introns. Additional coding or non-coding sequences may, but need not, be present within a polynucleotide of the present invention, and a polynucleotide may, but need not, be linked to other molecules and/or support materials.

30 Polynucleotides may comprise a native sequence (i.e., an endogenous sequence that encodes an antibody or a portion thereof) or may comprise a variant of such a sequence. Polynucleotide variants contain one or more substitutions, additions,

- 75 -

deletions and/or insertions such that the immunoreactivity of the encoded polypeptide is not diminished, relative to a native immunoreactive molecule. The effect on the immunoreactivity of the encoded polypeptide may generally be assessed as described herein. Variants preferably exhibit at least about 70% identity, more preferably, at least about 80% identity, yet more preferably, at least about 90% identity, and most preferably, at least about 95% identity to a polynucleotide sequence that encodes a native antibody or a portion thereof.

Two polynucleotide or polypeptide sequences are said to be "identical" if the sequence of nucleotides or amino acids in the two sequences is the same when aligned for maximum correspondence as described below. Comparisons between two sequences are typically performed by comparing the sequences over a comparison window to identify and compare local regions of sequence similarity. A "comparison window" as used herein, refers to a segment of at least about 20 contiguous positions, usually 30 to about 75, or 40 to about 50, in which a sequence may be compared to a reference sequence of the same number of contiguous positions after the two sequences are optimally aligned.

Optimal alignment of sequences for comparison may be conducted using the Megalign program in the Lasergene suite of bioinformatics software (DNASTAR, Inc., Madison, WI), using default parameters. This program embodies several alignment schemes described in the following references: Dayhoff, M.O., 1978, A model of evolutionary change in proteins - Matrices for detecting distant relationships. In Dayhoff, M.O. (ed.) Atlas of Protein Sequence and Structure, National Biomedical Research Foundation, Washington DC Vol. 5, Suppl. 3, pp. 345-358; Hein J., 1990, Unified Approach to Alignment and Phylogenies pp. 626-645 Methods in Enzymology vol. 183, Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, CA; Higgins, D.G. and Sharp, P.M., 1989, CABIOS 5:151-153; Myers, E.W. and Muller W., 1988, CABIOS 4:11-17; Robinson, E.D., 1971, Comb. Theor. 11:105; Santou, N., Nes, M., 1987, Mol. Biol. Evol. 4:406-425; Sneath, P.H.A. and Sokal, R.R., 1973, Numerical Taxonomy the Principles and Practice of Numerical Taxonomy, Freeman Press, San Francisco, CA; Wilbur, W.J. and Lipman, D.J., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 80:726-730.

Preferably, the "percentage of sequence identity" is determined by comparing two optimally aligned sequences over a window of comparison of at least 20 positions,

- 76 -

wherein the portion of the polynucleotide or polypeptide sequence in the comparison window may comprise additions or deletions (i.e., gaps) of 20 percent or less, usually 5 to 15 percent, or 10 to 12 percent, as compared to the reference sequences (which does not comprise additions or deletions) for optimal alignment of the two sequences.

- 5 The percentage is calculated by determining the number of positions at which the identical nucleic acid bases or amino acid residue occurs in both sequences to yield the number of matched positions, dividing the number of matched positions by the total number of positions in the reference sequence (i.e. the window size) and multiplying the results by 100 to yield the percentage of sequence identity.

- 10 Variants may also, or alternatively, be substantially homologous to a native gene, or a portion or complement thereof. Such polynucleotide variants are capable of hybridizing under moderately stringent conditions to a naturally occurring DNA sequence encoding a native antibody (or a complementary sequence).

- Suitable "moderately stringent conditions" include prewashing in a solution of 5 X  
15 SSC, 0.5% SDS, 1.0 mM EDTA (pH 8.0); hybridizing at 50°C-65°C, 5 X SSC, overnight; followed by washing twice at 65°C for 20 minutes with each of 2X, 0.5X and 0.2X SSC containing 0.1 % SDS.

- As used herein, "highly stringent conditions" or "high stringency conditions" are those that: (1) employ low ionic strength and high temperature for washing, for example  
20 0.015 M sodium chloride/0.0015 M sodium citrate/0.1% sodium dodecyl sulfate at 50°C; (2) employ during hybridization a denaturing agent, such as formamide, for example, 50% (v/v) formamide with 0.1% bovine serum albumin/0.1% Ficoll/0.1% polyvinylpyrrolidone/50 mM sodium phosphate buffer at pH 6.5 with 750 mM sodium chloride, 75 mM sodium citrate at 42°C; or (3) employ 50% formamide, 5 x SSC (0.75 M  
25 NaCl, 0.075 M sodium citrate), 50 mM sodium phosphate (pH 6.8), 0.1% sodium pyrophosphate, 5 x Denhardt's solution, sonicated salmon sperm DNA (50 µg/ml), 0.1% SDS, and 10% dextran sulfate at 42°C, with washes at 42°C in 0.2 x SSC (sodium chloride/sodium citrate) and 50% formamide at 55°C, followed by a high-stringency wash consisting of 0.1 x SSC containing EDTA at 55°C. The skilled artisan will  
30 recognize how to adjust the temperature, ionic strength, etc. as necessary to accommodate factors such as probe length and the like.

- 77 -

It will be appreciated by those of ordinary skill in the art that, as a result of the degeneracy of the genetic code, there are many nucleotide sequences that encode a polypeptide as described herein. Some of these polynucleotides bear minimal homology to the nucleotide sequence of any native gene. Nonetheless, polynucleotides that vary due to differences in codon usage are specifically contemplated by the present invention. Further, alleles of the genes comprising the polynucleotide sequences provided herein are within the scope of the present invention. Alleles are endogenous genes that are altered as a result of one or more mutations, such as deletions, additions and/or substitutions of nucleotides. The resulting mRNA and protein may, but need not, have an altered structure or function. Alleles may be identified using standard techniques (such as hybridization, amplification and/or database sequence comparison).

The polynucleotides of this invention can be obtained using chemical synthesis, recombinant methods, or PCR. Methods of chemical polynucleotide synthesis are well known in the art and need not be described in detail herein. One of skill in the art can use the sequences provided herein and a commercial DNA synthesizer to produce a desired DNA sequence.

For preparing polynucleotides using recombinant methods, a polynucleotide comprising a desired sequence can be inserted into a suitable vector, and the vector in turn can be introduced into a suitable host cell for replication and amplification, as further discussed herein. Polynucleotides may be inserted into host cells by any means known in the art. Cells are transformed by introducing an exogenous polynucleotide by direct uptake, endocytosis, transfection, F-mating or electroporation. Once introduced, the exogenous polynucleotide can be maintained within the cell as a non-integrated vector (such as a plasmid) or integrated into the host cell genome. The polynucleotide so amplified can be isolated from the host cell by methods well known within the art. See, e.g., Sambrook et al., 1989.

Alternatively, PCR allows reproduction of DNA sequences. PCR technology is well known in the art and is described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195, 4,800,159, 4,754,065 and 4,683,202, as well as PCR: The Polymerase Chain Reaction, Mullis et al. eds., Birkauswer Press, Boston, 1994.

RNA can be obtained by using the isolated DNA in an appropriate vector and inserting it into a suitable host cell. When the cell replicates and the DNA is transcribed

into RNA, the RNA can then be isolated using methods well known to those of skill in the art, as set forth in Sambrook et al., 1989, supra, for example.

Suitable cloning vectors may be constructed according to standard techniques, or may be selected from a large number of cloning vectors available in the art. While the cloning vector selected may vary according to the host cell intended to be used, useful cloning vectors will generally have the ability to self-replicate, may possess a single target for a particular restriction endonuclease, and/or may carry genes for a marker that can be used in selecting clones containing the vector. Suitable examples include plasmids and bacterial viruses, e.g., pUC18, pUC19, Bluescript (e.g., pBS SK+) and its derivatives, mp18, mp19, pBR322, pMB9, ColE1, pCR1, RP4, phage DNAs, and shuttle vectors such as pSA3 and pAT28. These and many other cloning vectors are available from commercial vendors such as BioRad, Strategene, and Invitrogen.

Expression vectors generally are replicable polynucleotide constructs that contain a polynucleotide according to the invention. It is implied that an expression vector must be replicable in the host cells either as episomes or as an integral part of the chromosomal DNA. Suitable expression vectors include but are not limited to plasmids, viral vectors, including adenoviruses, adeno-associated viruses, retroviruses, cosmids, and expression vector(s) disclosed in PCT Publication No. WO 87/04462. Vector components may generally include, but are not limited to, one or more of the following: a signal sequence; an origin of replication; one or more marker genes; suitable transcriptional controlling elements (such as promoters, enhancers and terminator). For expression (i.e., translation), one or more translational controlling elements are also usually required, such as ribosome binding sites, translation initiation sites, and stop codons.

The vectors containing the polynucleotides of interest can be introduced into the host cell by any of a number of appropriate means, including electroporation, transfection employing calcium chloride, rubidium chloride, calcium phosphate, DEAE-dextran, or other substances; microprojectile bombardment; lipofection; and infection (e.g., where the vector is an infectious agent such as vaccinia virus). The choice of introducing vectors or polynucleotides will often depend on features of the host cell.

The invention also provides host cells comprising any of the polynucleotides described herein. Any host cells capable of over-expressing heterologous DNAs can be



- 79 -

used for the purpose of isolating the genes encoding the antibody, polypeptide or protein of interest. Non-limiting examples of mammalian host cells include but not limited to COS, HeLa, and CHO cells. See also PCT Publication No. WO 87/04462. Suitable non-mammalian host cells include prokaryotes (such as *E. coli* or *B. subtilis*) and yeast (such as *S. cerevisiae*, *S. pombe*; or *K. lactis*). Preferably, the host cells express the cDNAs at a level of about 5 fold higher, more preferably, 10 fold higher, even more preferably, 20 fold higher than that of the corresponding endogenous antibody or protein of interest, if present, in the host cells. Screening the host cells for a specific binding to Trop-2 or an Trop-2 domain (e.g., domains 1-4) is effected by an immunoassay or FACS. A cell overexpressing the antibody or protein of interest can be identified.

#### Trop-2 Antibody Conjugates

The present invention also provides a conjugate (or immunoconjugate) of the Trop-2 antibody as described herein, or of the antigen binding fragment thereof, wherein the antibody or the antigen binding fragment is conjugated to an agent (e.g., a cytotoxic agent) for targeted immunotherapy (e.g., antibody-drug conjugates) either directly or indirectly via a linker. For example, a cytotoxic agent can be linked or conjugated to the Trop-2 antibody or the antigen binding fragment thereof as described herein for targeted local delivery of the cytotoxic agent moiety to tumors (e.g., Trop-2 expressing tumor).

Methods for conjugating cytotoxic agent or other therapeutic agents to antibodies have been described in various publications. For example, chemical modification can be made in the antibodies either through lysine side chain amines or through cysteine sulfhydryl groups activated by reducing interchain disulfide bonds for the conjugation reaction to occur. See, e.g., Tanaka et al., FEBS Letters 579:2092-2096, 2005, and Gentle et al., Bioconjugate Chem. 15:658-663, 2004. Reactive cysteine residues engineered at specific sites of antibodies for specific drug conjugation with defined stoichiometry have also been described. See, e.g., Junutula et al., Nature Biotechnology, 26:925-932, 2008. Conjugation using an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag or an endogenous glutamine made reactive (i.e., the ability to form a covalent bond as an acyl donor) by polypeptide engineering in the presence of transglutaminase and an amine (e.g., a cytotoxic agent comprising or attached to a

reactive amine) is also described in International Patent Application Serial No. PCT/IB2011/054899 (WO2012/059882).

In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody (e.g., a carboxyl terminus, an amino terminus, or at another site in the Trop-2 antibody). In some embodiments, the tag comprises an amino acid glutamine (Q) or an amino acid sequence GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, LLQGPGK (SEQ ID NO: 90), LLQGPG (SEQ ID NO: 91), LLQGPA (SEQ ID NO: 92), LLQGP (SEQ ID NO: 93), LLQP (SEQ ID NO: 94), LLQPGK (SEQ ID NO: 95), LLQGAPGK (SEQ ID NO: 96), LLQGAPG (SEQ ID NO: 97), LLQGAP (SEQ ID NO: 98), LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is K, G or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88), or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid and wherein X<sub>2</sub>, X<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>4</sub>, and X<sub>5</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids or absent (SEQ ID NO: 89). In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody, wherein the tag comprises an amino acid sequence GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78) engineered at the light chain carboxyl terminus of the Trop-2 antibody. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody, wherein the tag comprises an amino acid sequence GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81) engineered at the light chain carboxyl terminus of the Trop-2 antibody. In other embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody, wherein the tag comprises an amino acid sequence LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79) engineered at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus of the Trop-2 antibody and wherein the lysine residue at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus is deleted. In other embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site of the antibody, wherein the tag comprises an amino acid sequence LLQ engineered at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus of the Trop-2 antibody and wherein the lysine residue at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus is deleted. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the

conjugate as described herein comprises an amino acid substitution from asparagine (N) to glutamine (Q) at position 297 of the Trop-2 antibody.

Also provided is an isolated antibody comprising an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag and an amino acid modification at position 222, 340, or 370 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme), wherein the modification is an amino acid deletion, insertion, substitution, mutation, or any combination thereof. Accordingly, in some embodiments, provided is the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprising the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag (e.g., Q, GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, LLQGPGK (SEQ ID NO: 90), LLQGPG (SEQ ID NO: 91), LLQGPA (SEQ ID NO: 92), LLQGP (SEQ ID NO: 93), LLQP (SEQ ID NO: 94), LLQPGK (SEQ ID NO: 95), LLQGAPGK (SEQ ID NO: 96), LLQGAPG (SEQ ID NO: 97), LLQGAP (SEQ ID NO: 98), LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is K, G or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88), or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid and wherein X<sub>2</sub>, X<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>4</sub>, and X<sub>5</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids or absent (SEQ ID NO: 89) conjugated at a specific site (e.g., at a carboxyl terminus of the heavy or light chain or at another site) of the Trop-2 antibody and an amino acid modification at position 222, 340, or 370 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme). In some embodiments, the amino acid modification is a substitution from lysine to arginine (e.g., K222R, K340R, or K370R). In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising the sequence GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78) engineered at the C-terminus of the Trop-2 antibody light chain and an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme). In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising the sequence GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81) engineered at the C-terminus of the Trop-2 antibody light chain and an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme). In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising the sequence LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79) engineered at the C-terminus of the Trop-2 antibody heavy chain and an amino acid substitution

from lysine to arginine at position 222 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme), wherein the lysine residue at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus is deleted. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising the sequence LLQ engineered at the C-terminus of the Trop-2 antibody heavy chain and an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme), wherein the lysine residue at the heavy chain carboxyl terminus is deleted. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the conjugate as described herein comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising a glutamine engineered at position 297 of the Trop-2 antibody and an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222 of the antibody (Kabat numbering scheme).

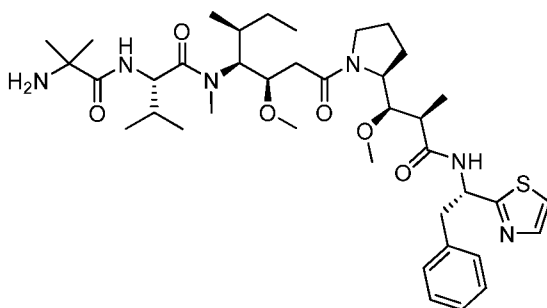
The agents that can be conjugated to the Trop-2 antibodies or the antigen binding fragments of the present invention include, but are not limited to, cytotoxic agents, immunomodulating agents, imaging agents, therapeutic proteins, biopolymers, or oligonucleotides.

Examples of a cytotoxic agent include, but are not limited to, an anthracycline, an auristatin, a dolastatin, CC-1065, a duocarmycin, an enediyne, a geldanamycin, a maytansine, a puromycin, a taxane, a vinca alkaloid, SN-38, tubulysin, hemiasterlin, and stereoisomers, isosteres, analogs or derivatives thereof.

The anthracyclines are derived from bacteria *Streptomyces* and have been used to treat a wide range of cancers, such as leukemias, lymphomas, breast, uterine, ovarian, and lung cancers. Exemplary anthracyclines include, but are not limited to, daunorubicin, doxorubicin (i.e., adriamycin), epirubicin, idarubicin, valrubicin, and mitoxantrone.

Dolastatins and their peptidic analogs and derivatives, auristatins, are highly potent antimitotic agents that have been shown to have anticancer and antifungal activity. See, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 5,663,149 and Pettit et al., *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 42:2961-2965, 1998. Exemplary dolastatins and auristatins include, but are not limited to, dolastatin 10, auristatin E, auristatin EB (AEB), auristatin EFP (AEFP), MMAD (Monomethyl Auristatin D or monomethyl dolastatin 10), MMAF (Monomethyl Auristatin F or N-methylvaline-valine-dolaisoleuine-dolaproine-phenylalanine), MMAE (Monomethyl Auristatin E or N-methylvaline-valine-dolaisoleuine-dolaproine-

norephedrine), 5-benzoylvaleric acid-AE ester (AEVB), and other novel auristatins (such as the ones described in U.S. Application No. 61/561,255 and 61/676,423). In some embodiments, the auristatin is 0101 (2-methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-[(2*S*)-2-[(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-[(1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-yl)ethyl]amino}propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide) having the following structure:



Duocarmycin and CC-1065 are DNA alkylating agents with cytotoxic potency. See Boger and Johnson, *PNAS* 92:3642-3649, 1995. Exemplary dolastatins and auristatins include, but are not limited to, (+)-docarmycin A and (+)-duocarmycin SA, and (+)-CC-1065.

Enediynes are a class of anti-tumor bacterial products characterized by either nine- and ten-membered rings or the presence of a cyclic system of conjugated triple-double-triple bonds. Exemplary enediynes include, but are not limited to, calicheamicin, esperamicin, and dynemicin.

Geldanamycins are benzoquinone ansamycin antibiotic that bind to Hsp90 (Heat Shock Protein 90) and have been used antitumor drugs. Exemplary geldanamycins include, but are not limited to, 17-AAG (17-N-Allylamino-17-Demethoxygeldanamycin) and 17-DMAG (17-Dimethylaminoethylamino-17-demethoxygeldanamycin).

Maytansines or their derivatives maytansinoids inhibit cell proliferation by inhibiting the microtubules formation during mitosis through inhibition of polymerization of tubulin. See Remillard et al., *Science* 189:1002-1005, 1975. Exemplary maytansines and maytansinoids include, but are not limited to, mertansine (DM1) and its derivatives as well as ansamitocin.

Taxanes are diterpenes that act as anti-tubulin agents or mitotic inhibitors. Exemplary taxanes include, but are not limited to, paclitaxel (e.g., TAXOL<sup>®</sup>) and docetaxel (TAXOTERE<sup>®</sup>).

Vinca alkyls are also anti-tubulin agents. Exemplary vinca alkyls include, but are not limited to, vincristine, vinblastine, vindesine, and vinorelbine.

In some embodiments, the agent is an immunomodulating agent. Examples of an immunomodulating agent include, but are not limited to, gancyclovir, etanercept, 5 tacrolimus, sirolimus, voclosporin, cyclosporine, rapamycin, cyclophosphamide, azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, methotrexate, glucocorticoid and its analogs, cytokines, stem cell growth factors, lymphotoxins, tumor necrosis factor (TNF), hematopoietic factors, interleukins (e.g., interleukin-1 (IL-1), IL-2, IL-3, IL-6, IL-10, IL-12, IL-18, and IL-21), colony stimulating factors (e.g., granulocyte-colony stimulating factor (G-CSF) and granulocyte macrophage-colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF)), interferons 10 (e.g., interferons- $\alpha$ , - $\beta$  and - $\gamma$ ), the stem cell growth factor designated "S 1 factor," erythropoietin and thrombopoietin, or a combination thereof.

In some embodiments, the agent is an imaging agent (e.g., a fluorophore or a PET (Positron Emission Tomography) label, SPECT (Single-Photon Emission 15 Computed Tomography) label), or MRI (Magnetic Resonance Imaging) label.

Examples of fluorophores include, but are not limited to, fluorescein isothiocyanate (FITC) (e.g., 5-FITC), fluorescein amidite (FAM) (e.g., 5-FAM), eosin, carboxyfluorescein, erythrosine, Alexa Fluor<sup>®</sup> (e.g., Alexa 350, 405, 430, 488, 500, 514, 532, 546, 555, 568, 594, 610, 633, 647, 660, 680, 700, or 750), 20 carboxytetramethylrhodamine (TAMRA) (e.g., 5-TAMRA), tetramethylrhodamine (TMR), and sulforhodamine (SR) (e.g., SR101).

In some embodiments, therapeutic or diagnostic radioisotopes or other labels (e.g., PET or SPECT labels) can be incorporated in the agent for conjugation to the Trop-2 antibodies or the antigen binding fragments as described herein. Examples of a 25 radioisotope or other labels include, but are not limited to, <sup>3</sup>H, <sup>11</sup>C, <sup>13</sup>N, <sup>14</sup>C, <sup>15</sup>N, <sup>15</sup>O, <sup>35</sup>S, <sup>18</sup>F, <sup>32</sup>P, <sup>33</sup>P, <sup>47</sup>Sc, <sup>51</sup>Cr, <sup>57</sup>Co, <sup>58</sup>Co, <sup>59</sup>Fe, <sup>62</sup>Cu, <sup>64</sup>Cu, <sup>67</sup>Cu, <sup>67</sup>Ga, <sup>68</sup>Ga, <sup>75</sup>Se, <sup>76</sup>Br, <sup>77</sup>Br, <sup>86</sup>Y, <sup>89</sup>Zr, <sup>90</sup>Y, <sup>94</sup>Tc, <sup>95</sup>Ru, <sup>97</sup>Ru, <sup>99</sup>Tc, <sup>103</sup>Ru, <sup>105</sup>Rh, <sup>105</sup>Ru, <sup>107</sup>Hg, <sup>109</sup>Pd, <sup>111</sup>Ag, <sup>111</sup>In, <sup>113</sup>In, <sup>121</sup>Te, <sup>122</sup>Te, <sup>123</sup>I, <sup>124</sup>I, <sup>125</sup>I, <sup>125</sup>Te, <sup>126</sup>I, <sup>131</sup>I, <sup>131</sup>In, <sup>133</sup>I, <sup>142</sup>Pr, <sup>143</sup>Pr, <sup>153</sup>Pb, <sup>153</sup>Sm, <sup>161</sup>Tb, <sup>165</sup>Tm, <sup>166</sup>Dy, <sup>166</sup>H, <sup>167</sup>Tm, <sup>168</sup>Tm, <sup>169</sup>Yb, <sup>177</sup>Lu, <sup>186</sup>Re, <sup>188</sup>Re, <sup>189</sup>Re, <sup>197</sup>Pt, <sup>198</sup>Au, <sup>199</sup>Au, 30 <sup>201</sup>Tl, <sup>203</sup>Hg, <sup>211</sup>At, <sup>212</sup>Bi, <sup>212</sup>Pb, <sup>213</sup>Bi, <sup>223</sup>Ra, <sup>224</sup>Ac, and <sup>225</sup>Ac.

In some embodiments, the agent is a therapeutic protein including, but is not limited to, a toxin, a hormone, an enzyme, and a growth factor.

Examples of a toxin protein (or polypeptide) include, but are not limited to, diphtheria (e.g., diphtheria A chain), *Pseudomonas* exotoxin and endotoxin, ricin (e.g., ricin A chain), abrin (e.g., abrin A chain), modeccin (e.g., modeccin A chain), alpha-sarcin, Aleurites fordii proteins, dianthin proteins, ribonuclease (RNase), DNase I, *Staphylococcal* enterotoxin-A, pokeweed antiviral protein, gelonin, diphtherin toxin, *Phytolaca americana* proteins (PAPI, PAPII, and PAP-S), momordica charantia inhibitor, curcin, crotin, sapaonaria officinalis inhibitor, mitogellin, restrictocin, phenomycin, enomycin, tricothecenes, inhibitor cystine knot (ICK) peptides (e.g., ceratotoxins), and conotoxin (e.g., KIIIA or SmIIIA).

In some embodiments, the agent is a biocompatible polymer. The Trop-2 antibodies or the antigen binding fragments as described herein can be conjugated to the biocompatible polymer to increase serum half-life and bioactivity, and/or to extend *in vivo* half-lives. Examples of biocompatible polymers include water-soluble polymer, such as polyethylene glycol (PEG) or its derivatives thereof and zwitterion-containing biocompatible polymers (e.g., a phosphorylcholine containing polymer).

In some embodiments, the agent is an oligonucleotide, such as anti-sense oligonucleotides.

In another aspect, the invention provides a conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment as described herein, wherein the conjugate comprises the formula: antibody-(acyl donor glutamine-containing tag)-(linker)-(cytotoxic agent), wherein the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag is engineered at a specific site of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment (e.g., at a carboxyl terminus of the heavy or light chain or at another site), wherein the tag is conjugated to a linker (e.g., a linker containing one or more reactive amines (e.g., primary amine  $\text{NH}_2$ )), and wherein the linker is conjugated to a cytotoxic agent (e.g., MMAD or other auristatins such as 0101).

Examples of a linker containing one or more reactive amines include, but are not limited to, acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl (AcLys-VC-PABC) or amino PEG6-propionyl. See, e.g. WO2012/059882.

In some embodiments, the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprises GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO:78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO:79), GLLQGA (SEQ ID NO:81), LLQ, LLQGPGK (SEQ ID NO: 90), LLQGPG (SEQ ID NO: 91), LLQGPA (SEQ ID NO: 92), LLQGP (SEQ ID NO: 93), LLQP (SEQ ID NO: 94), LLQPGK (SEQ ID NO: 95),

- 86 -

LLQGAPGK (SEQ ID NO: 96), LLQGAPG (SEQ ID NO: 97), LLQGAP (SEQ ID NO: 98), LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is K, G or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88), or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is any naturally occurring amino acid and  
 5 wherein X<sub>2</sub>, X<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>4</sub>, and X<sub>5</sub> are any naturally occurring amino acids or absent (SEQ ID NO: 89).

In some embodiments, the conjugate is 1) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101; 2) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD; 3) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101; 4) antibody-  
 10 LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD; 5) antibody-GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101; and 6) antibody-GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD. In some embodiments, the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising, e.g., LLQ, SEQ ID NO: 79, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, or 98, is engineered at the C-terminus of the heavy chain of the antibody, wherein the lysine  
 15 residue at the C-terminus is deleted. In other embodiments, the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag (e.g., GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)) is engineered at the C-terminus of the light chain of the antibody. Examples of the antibody include, but are not limited to, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, and h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11,  
 20 h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3,  
 25 h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h7E6SVGN, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF.

In one variation, the conjugate further comprises an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222. Accordingly, for example, the conjugate is 1) antibody-GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD and comprises K222R; 2) antibody-GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101 and comprises K222R;  
 30 3) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-AcLys-VC-PABC-0101 and comprises K222R; 4) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD and comprises K222R; and 5) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD and comprises



K222R. In some embodiments, the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprising, e.g., LLQ, SEQ ID NO: 79, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, or 98, is engineered at the C-terminus of the heavy chain of the antibody, wherein the lysine residue at the C-terminus is deleted. In other embodiments, the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag (e.g., GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)) is engineered at the C-terminus of the light chain of the antibody. Examples of the antibody include, but are not limited to, h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, and h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF.

In another aspect, the invention provides a conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment as described herein, the conjugate comprises amino acid substitutions at positions N297Q and K222R, a linker comprising amino-PEG6-propionyl, and a cytotoxic agent (e.g., MMAD or other auristatins). For example, the conjugate is h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28, h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF conjugating to amino-PEG6-propionyl and MMAD or h7E6\_SVG, h7E6\_SVG1, h7E6\_SVG2, h7E6\_SVG3, h7E6\_SVG4, h7E6\_SVG5, h7E6\_SVG6, h7E6\_SVG7, h7E6\_SVG8, h7E6\_SVG9, h7E6\_SVG10, h7E6\_SVG11, h7E6\_SVG12, h7E6\_SVG13, h7E6\_SVG14, h7E6\_SVG15, h7E6\_SVG16, h7E6\_SVG17, h7E6\_SVG18, h7E6\_SVG19, h7E6\_SVG20, h7E6\_SVG21, h7E6\_SVG22, h7E6\_SVG23, h7E6\_SVG24, h7E6\_SVG25, h7E6\_SVG26, h7E6\_SVG27, h7E6\_SVG28,

h7E6\_SVG29, h7E6\_SVG30, h7E6\_SVG31, h7E6\_SVG32, h7E6\_SVGL, h7E6\_SVGL1, h7E6\_SVGL2, h7E6\_SVGL3, h7E6\_SVGL4, h7E6\_SVGL5, h6G11, or h6G11\_FKG\_SF conjugating to amino-PEG6-propionyl and 0101.

## 5 Methods of Using the Trop-2 Antibodies and the Antibody Conjugates Thereof

The antibodies and the antibody conjugates of the present invention are useful in various applications including, but are not limited to, therapeutic treatment methods and diagnostic treatment methods.

10 In one aspect, the invention provides a method for treating a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a subject. In some embodiments, the method of treating a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a subject comprises administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of a composition (e.g., pharmaceutical composition) comprising the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein. The conditions associated with Trop-2 expression include, but are not  
15 limited to, abnormal Trop-2 expression, altered or aberrant Trop-2 expression, Trop-2 overexpression, and a proliferative disorder (e.g., cancer).

Accordingly, in some embodiments, provided is a method of treating a cancer in a subject comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of a composition comprising the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as  
20 described herein. As used herein, cancers include, but are not limited to bladder, breast, cervical, choriocarcinoma, colon, esophageal, gastric, glioblastoma, head and neck, kidney, lung, oral, ovarian, pancreatic, prostate, and skin cancer. In some embodiments, provided is a method of inhibiting tumor growth or progression in a subject who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor, comprising administering to the subject in  
25 need thereof an effective amount of a composition comprising the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein. In other embodiments, provided is a method of inhibiting metastasis of Trop-2 expressing cancer cells in a subject, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of a composition comprising the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as  
30 described herein. In other embodiments, provided is a method of inducing regression of a Trop-2 expressing tumor regression in a subject, comprising administering to the

subject in need thereof an effective amount of a composition comprising the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein.

In another aspect, provided is a method of detecting, diagnosing, and/or monitoring a condition associated with Trop-2 expression. For example, the Trop-2 antibodies as described herein can be labeled with a detectable moiety such as an imaging agent and an enzyme-substrate label. The antibodies as described herein can also be used for *in vivo* diagnostic assays, such as *in vivo* imaging (e.g., PET or SPECT), or a staining reagent.

In some embodiments, the methods described herein further comprise a step of treating a subject with an additional form of therapy. In some embodiments, the additional form of therapy is an additional anti-cancer therapy including, but not limited to, chemotherapy, radiation, surgery, hormone therapy, and/or additional immunotherapy.

In some embodiments, the additional form of therapy comprises administering one or more therapeutic agent in addition to the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein. The therapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, a second antibody (e.g., an anti-VEGF antibody, an anti-HER2 antibody, anti-CD25 antibody, and/or an anti-CD20 antibody), an angiogenesis inhibitor, a cytotoxic agent, an anti-inflammatory agent (e.g., paclitaxel, docetaxel, cisplatin, doxorubicin, prednisone, mitomycin, progesterone, tamoxifen, or fluorouracil)

The Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates can be administered to an individual via any suitable route. It should be understood by persons skilled in the art that the examples described herein are not intended to be limiting but to be illustrative of the techniques available. Accordingly, in some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate is administered to an individual in accord with known methods, such as intravenous administration, e.g., as a bolus or by continuous infusion over a period of time, by intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intracerebrospinal, intracranial, transdermal, subcutaneous, intra-articular, sublingually, intrasynovial, via insufflation, intrathecal, oral, inhalation or topical routes. Administration can be systemic, e.g., intravenous administration, or localized. Commercially available nebulizers for liquid formulations, including jet nebulizers and ultrasonic nebulizers are useful for administration. Liquid formulations can be directly nebulized and lyophilized powder can

- 90 -

be nebulized after reconstitution. Alternatively, the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate can be aerosolized using a fluorocarbon formulation and a metered dose inhaler, or inhaled as a lyophilized and milled powder.

5 In one embodiment, the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate is administered via site-specific or targeted local delivery techniques. Examples of site-specific or targeted local delivery techniques include various implantable depot sources of the Trop antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate or local delivery catheters, such as infusion catheters, indwelling catheters, or needle catheters, synthetic grafts, adventitial wraps, shunts and stents or other implantable devices, site specific carriers,  
10 direct injection, or direct application. See, e.g., PCT Publication No. WO 00/53211 and U.S. Pat. No. 5,981,568.

Various formulations of the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate may be used for administration. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate may be administered neat. In some embodiments, of the Trop-2  
15 antibody (or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate) and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient may be in various formulations. Pharmaceutically acceptable excipients are known in the art, and are relatively inert substances that facilitate administration of a pharmacologically effective substance. For example, an excipient can give form or consistency, or act as a diluent. Suitable excipients include but are not limited to  
20 stabilizing agents, wetting and emulsifying agents, salts for varying osmolarity, encapsulating agents, buffers, and skin penetration enhancers. Excipients as well as formulations for parenteral and nonparenteral drug delivery are set forth in Remington, The Science and Practice of Pharmacy 20th Ed. Mack Publishing, 2000.

In some embodiments, these agents are formulated for administration by injection  
25 (e.g., intraperitoneally, intravenously, subcutaneously, intramuscularly, etc.). Accordingly, these agents can be combined with pharmaceutically acceptable vehicles such as saline, Ringer's solution, dextrose solution, and the like. The particular dosage regimen, i.e., dose, timing and repetition, will depend on the particular individual and that individual's medical history.

30 Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein can be administered using any suitable method, including by injection (e.g., intraperitoneally, intravenously, subcutaneously, intramuscularly, etc.). The Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2

- 91 -

antibody conjugate can also be administered via inhalation, as described herein. Generally, for administration of a Trop-2 antibody and a Trop-2 antibody conjugate, an initial candidate dosage can be about 2 mg/kg. For the purpose of the present invention, a typical daily dosage might range from about any of 3 µg/kg to 30 µg/kg to 5 300 µg/kg to 3 mg/kg, to 30 mg/kg, to 100 mg/kg or more, depending on the factors mentioned above. For example, dosage of about 1 mg/kg, about 2.5 mg/kg, about 5 mg/kg, about 10 mg/kg, and about 25 mg/kg may be used. For repeated administrations over several days or longer, depending on the condition, the treatment is sustained until a desired suppression of symptoms occurs or until sufficient therapeutic 10 levels are achieved, for example, to inhibit or delay tumor growth/progression or metastasis of cancer cells. An exemplary dosing regimen comprises administering an initial dose of about 2 mg/kg, followed by a weekly maintenance dose of about 1 mg/kg of the Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate, or followed by a maintenance dose of about 1 mg/kg every other week. Other exemplary dosing regimen comprises 15 administering increasing doses (e.g., initial dose of 1 mg/kg and gradual increase to one or more higher doses every week or longer time period). Other dosage regimens may also be useful, depending on the pattern of pharmacokinetic decay that the practitioner wishes to achieve. For example, in some embodiments, dosing from one to four times a week is contemplated. In other embodiments dosing once a month or once every other 20 month or every three months is contemplated. The progress of this therapy is easily monitored by conventional techniques and assays. The dosing regimen (including the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate used) can vary over time.

For the purpose of the present invention, the appropriate dosage of a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate will depend on the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 25 antibody conjugate (or compositions thereof) employed, the type and severity of symptoms to be treated, whether the agent is administered for therapeutic purposes, previous therapy, the patient's clinical history and response to the agent, the patient's clearance rate for the administered agent, and the discretion of the attending physician. Typically the clinician will administer a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate 30 until a dosage is reached that achieves the desired result. Dose and/or frequency can vary over course of treatment. Empirical considerations, such as the half-life, generally will contribute to the determination of the dosage. For example, antibodies that are

compatible with the human immune system, such as humanized antibodies or fully human antibodies, may be used to prolong half-life of the antibody and to prevent the antibody being attacked by the host's immune system. Frequency of administration may be determined and adjusted over the course of therapy, and is generally, but not necessarily, based on treatment and/or suppression and/or amelioration and/or delay of symptoms, e.g., tumor growth inhibition or delay, etc. Alternatively, sustained continuous release formulations of Trop-2 antibodies or Trop-2 antibody conjugates may be appropriate. Various formulations and devices for achieving sustained release are known in the art.

In one embodiment, dosages for a Trop-2 antibody or a trop-2 antibody conjugate may be determined empirically in individuals who have been given one or more administration(s) of the Trop-2 antibody or its Trop-2 antibody conjugate. Individuals are given incremental dosages of a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antagonist. To assess efficacy, an indicator of the disease can be followed.

Administration of an Trop-2 antibody or an Trop-2 antibody conjugate in accordance with the method in the present invention can be continuous or intermittent, depending, for example, upon the recipient's physiological condition, whether the purpose of the administration is therapeutic or prophylactic, and other factors known to skilled practitioners. The administration of a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate may be essentially continuous over a preselected period of time or may be in a series of spaced doses.

In some embodiments, more than one Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate may be present. At least one, at least two, at least three, at least four, at least five different or more Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate can be present.

Generally, those Trop-2 antibodies or Trop-2 antibody conjugates may have complementary activities that do not adversely affect each other. For example, one or more of the following Trop-2 antibody may be used: a first Trop-2 antibody directed to one epitope on Trop-2 and a second Trop-2 antibody directed to a different epitope on Trop-2.

Therapeutic formulations of the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate used in accordance with the present invention are prepared for storage by mixing an antibody having the desired degree of purity with optional pharmaceutically acceptable

carriers, excipients or stabilizers (Remington, The Science and Practice of Pharmacy 21st Ed. Mack Publishing, 2005), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations employed, and may comprise buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; salts such as sodium chloride; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens, such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrans; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN<sup>TM</sup>, PLURONICS<sup>TM</sup> or polyethylene glycol (PEG).

Liposomes containing the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate are prepared by methods known in the art, such as described in Epstein, et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 82:3688, 1985; Hwang, et al., Proc. Natl Acad. Sci. USA 77:4030, 1980; and U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,485,045 and 4,544,545. Liposomes with enhanced circulation time are disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,013,556. Particularly useful liposomes can be generated by the reverse phase evaporation method with a lipid composition comprising phosphatidylcholine, cholesterol and PEG-derivatized phosphatidylethanolamine (PEG-PE). Liposomes are extruded through filters of defined pore size to yield liposomes with the desired diameter.

The active ingredients may also be entrapped in microcapsules prepared, for example, by coacervation techniques or by interfacial polymerization, for example, hydroxymethylcellulose or gelatin-microcapsules and poly-(methylmethacrylate) microcapsules, respectively, in colloidal drug delivery systems (for example, liposomes, albumin microspheres, microemulsions, nano-particles and nanocapsules) or in

macroemulsions. Such techniques are disclosed in Remington, The Science and Practice of Pharmacy 21st Ed. Mack Publishing, 2005.

Sustained-release preparations may be prepared. Suitable examples of sustained-release preparations include semipermeable matrices of solid hydrophobic polymers containing the antibody, which matrices are in the form of shaped articles, e.g. films, or microcapsules. Examples of sustained-release matrices include polyesters, hydrogels (for example, poly(2-hydroxyethyl-methacrylate), or 'poly(vinylalcohol)'), polylactides (U.S. Pat. No. 3,773,919), copolymers of L-glutamic acid and ethyl-L-glutamate, non-degradable ethylene-vinyl acetate, degradable lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymers such as the LUPRON DEPOT<sup>TM</sup> (injectable microspheres composed of lactic acid-glycolic acid copolymer and leuprolide acetate), sucrose acetate isobutyrate, and poly-D-(-)-3-hydroxybutyric acid.

The formulations to be used for *in vivo* administration must be sterile. This is readily accomplished by, for example, filtration through sterile filtration membranes. Therapeutic Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate compositions are generally placed into a container having a sterile access port, for example, an intravenous solution bag or vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle.

The compositions according to the present invention may be in unit dosage forms such as tablets, pills, capsules, powders, granules, solutions or suspensions, or suppositories, for oral, parenteral or rectal administration, or administration by inhalation or insufflation.

For preparing solid compositions such as tablets, the principal active ingredient is mixed with a pharmaceutical carrier, e.g. conventional tableting ingredients such as corn starch, lactose, sucrose, sorbitol, talc, stearic acid, magnesium stearate, dicalcium phosphate or gums, and other pharmaceutical diluents, e.g. water, to form a solid preformulation composition containing a homogeneous mixture of a compound of the present invention, or a non-toxic pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. When referring to these preformulation compositions as homogeneous, it is meant that the active ingredient is dispersed evenly throughout the composition so that the composition may be readily subdivided into equally effective unit dosage forms such as tablets, pills and capsules. This solid preformulation composition is then subdivided into unit dosage forms of the type described above containing from 0.1 to about 500 mg of the active



ingredient of the present invention. The tablets or pills of the novel composition can be coated or otherwise compounded to provide a dosage form affording the advantage of prolonged action. For example, the tablet or pill can comprise an inner dosage and an outer dosage component, the latter being in the form of an envelope over the former.

- 5 The two components can be separated by an enteric layer that serves to resist disintegration in the stomach and permits the inner component to pass intact into the duodenum or to be delayed in release. A variety of materials can be used for such enteric layers or coatings, such materials including a number of polymeric acids and mixtures of polymeric acids with such materials as shellac, cetyl alcohol and cellulose acetate.

10 Suitable surface-active agents include, in particular, non-ionic agents, such as polyoxyethylenesorbitans (e.g. Tween<sup>TM</sup> 20, 40, 60, 80 or 85) and other sorbitans (e.g. Span<sup>TM</sup> 20, 40, 60, 80 or 85). Compositions with a surface-active agent will conveniently comprise between 0.05 and 5% surface-active agent, and can be between 15 0.1 and 2.5%. It will be appreciated that other ingredients may be added, for example mannitol or other pharmaceutically acceptable vehicles, if necessary.

Suitable emulsions may be prepared using commercially available fat emulsions, such as Intralipid<sup>TM</sup>, Liposyn<sup>TM</sup>, Infonutrol<sup>TM</sup>, Lipofundin<sup>TM</sup> and Lipiphysan<sup>TM</sup>. The active ingredient may be either dissolved in a pre-mixed emulsion composition or alternatively 20 it may be dissolved in an oil (e.g. soybean oil, safflower oil, cottonseed oil, sesame oil, corn oil or almond oil) and an emulsion formed upon mixing with a phospholipid (e.g. egg phospholipids, soybean phospholipids or soybean lecithin) and water. It will be appreciated that other ingredients may be added, for example glycerol or glucose, to adjust the tonicity of the emulsion. Suitable emulsions will typically contain up to 20% 25 oil, for example, between 5 and 20%. The fat emulsion can comprise fat droplets between 0.1 and 1.0  $\mu\text{m}$ , particularly 0.1 and 0.5  $\mu\text{m}$ , and have a pH in the range of 5.5 to 8.0.

The emulsion compositions can be those prepared by mixing a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate with Intralipid<sup>TM</sup> or the components thereof (soybean oil, 30 egg phospholipids, glycerol and water).

Compositions for inhalation or insufflation include solutions and suspensions in pharmaceutically acceptable, aqueous or organic solvents, or mixtures thereof, and

powders. The liquid or solid compositions may contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable excipients as set out above. In some embodiments, the compositions are administered by the oral or nasal respiratory route for local or systemic effect. Compositions in preferably sterile pharmaceutically acceptable solvents may be  
5 nebulised by use of gases. Nebulised solutions may be breathed directly from the nebulising device or the nebulising device may be attached to a face mask, tent or intermittent positive pressure breathing machine. Solution, suspension or powder compositions may be administered, preferably orally or nasally, from devices which deliver the formulation in an appropriate manner.

10

### Compositions

The compositions used in the methods of the invention comprise an effective amount of a Trop-2 antibody or a Trop-2 antibody conjugate as described herein. Examples of such compositions, as well as how to formulate, are also described in an  
15 earlier section and below. In some embodiments, the composition comprises one or more Trop-2 antibodies or Trop-2 antibody conjugates. For example, Trop-2 antibody recognizes human Trop-2. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody is a human antibody, a humanized antibody, or a chimeric antibody. In some embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody comprises a constant region that is capable of triggering a desired  
20 immune response, such as antibody-mediated lysis or ADCC. In other embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody comprises a constant region that does not trigger an unwanted or undesirable immune response, such as antibody-mediated lysis or ADCC. In other embodiments, the Trop-2 antibody comprises one or more CDR(s) of the antibody (such as one, two, three, four, five, or, in some embodiments, all six CDRs).

25 It is understood that the compositions can comprise more than one Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate (e.g., a mixture of Trop-2 antibodies that recognize different epitopes of Trop-2). Other exemplary compositions comprise more than one Trop-2 antibody or Trop-2 antibody conjugate that recognize the same epitope(s), or different species of Trop-2 antibodies or Trop-2 antibody conjugate that  
30 bind to different epitopes of Trop-2 (e.g., human Trop-2).

The composition used in the present invention can further comprise pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers (Remington: The

- 97 -

Science and practice of Pharmacy 21st Ed., 2005, Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, Ed. K. E. Hoover), in the form of lyophilized formulations or aqueous solutions. Acceptable carriers, excipients, or stabilizers are nontoxic to recipients at the dosages and concentrations, and may comprise buffers such as phosphate, citrate, and other organic acids; antioxidants including ascorbic acid and methionine; preservatives (such as octadecyldimethylbenzyl ammonium chloride; hexamethonium chloride; benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride; phenol, butyl or benzyl alcohol; alkyl parabens such as methyl or propyl paraben; catechol; resorcinol; cyclohexanol; 3-pentanol; and m-cresol); low molecular weight (less than about 10 residues) polypeptides; proteins, such as serum albumin, gelatin, or immunoglobulins; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinylpyrrolidone; amino acids such as glycine, glutamine, asparagine, histidine, arginine, or lysine; monosaccharides, disaccharides, and other carbohydrates including glucose, mannose, or dextrans; chelating agents such as EDTA; sugars such as sucrose, mannitol, trehalose or sorbitol; salt-forming counter-ions such as sodium; metal complexes (e.g. Zn-protein complexes); and/or non-ionic surfactants such as TWEEN™, PLURONICS™ or polyethylene glycol (PEG). Pharmaceutically acceptable excipients are further described herein.

### Kits

The invention also provides kits for use in the instant methods. Kits of the invention include one or more containers comprising the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate as described herein and instructions for use in accordance with any of the methods of the invention described herein. Generally, these instructions comprise a description of administration of the Trop-2 antibody or the Trop-2 antibody conjugate for the above described therapeutic treatments.

The instructions relating to the use of the Trop-2 antibodies or the Trop-2 antibody conjugates as described herein generally include information as to dosage, dosing schedule, and route of administration for the intended treatment. The containers may be unit doses, bulk packages (e.g., multi-dose packages) or sub-unit doses. Instructions supplied in the kits of the invention are typically written instructions on a label or package insert (e.g., a paper sheet included in the kit), but machine-readable

instructions (e.g., instructions carried on a magnetic or optical storage disk) are also acceptable.

The kits of this invention are in suitable packaging. Suitable packaging includes, but is not limited to, vials, bottles, jars, flexible packaging (e.g., sealed Mylar or plastic bags), and the like. Also contemplated are packages for use in combination with a specific device, such as an inhaler, nasal administration device (e.g., an atomizer) or an infusion device such as a minipump. A kit may have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). The container may also have a sterile access port (for example the container may be an intravenous solution bag or a vial having a stopper pierceable by a hypodermic injection needle). At least one active agent in the composition is a Trop-2 antibody. The container may further comprise a second pharmaceutically active agent.

Kits may optionally provide additional components such as buffers and interpretive information. Normally, the kit comprises a container and a label or package insert(s) on or associated with the container.

#### Mutations and Modifications

To express the Trop-2 antibodies of the present invention, DNA fragments encoding VH and VL regions can first be obtained using any of the methods described above. Various modifications, e.g. mutations, substitutions, deletions, and/or additions can also be introduced into the DNA sequences using standard methods known to those of skill in the art. For example, mutagenesis can be carried out using standard methods, such as PCR-mediated mutagenesis, in which the mutated nucleotides are incorporated into the PCR primers such that the PCR product contains the desired mutations or site-directed mutagenesis.

One type of substitution, for example, that may be made is to change one or more cysteines in the antibody, which may be chemically reactive, to another residue, such as, without limitation, alanine or serine. For example, there can be a substitution of a non-canonical cysteine. The substitution can be made in a CDR or framework region of a variable domain or in the constant region of an antibody. In some embodiments, the cysteine is canonical.

The antibodies may also be modified, e.g. in the variable domains of the heavy and/or light chains, e.g., to alter a binding property of the antibody. For example, a mutation may be made in one or more of the CDR regions to increase or decrease the  $K_D$  of the antibody for Trop-2, to increase or decrease  $k_{off}$ , or to alter the binding specificity of the antibody. Techniques in site-directed mutagenesis are well-known in the art. See, e.g., Sambrook et al. and Ausubel et al., *supra*.

A modification or mutation may also be made in a framework region or constant region to increase the half-life of an Trop-2 antibody. See, e.g., PCT Publication No. WO 00/09560. A mutation in a framework region or constant region can also be made to alter the immunogenicity of the antibody, to provide a site for covalent or non-covalent binding to another molecule, or to alter such properties as complement fixation, FcR binding and antibody-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity. According to the invention, a single antibody may have mutations in any one or more of the CDRs or framework regions of the variable domain or in the constant region.

In a process known as "germlining", certain amino acids in the  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  sequences can be mutated to match those found naturally in germline  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  sequences. In particular, the amino acid sequences of the framework regions in the  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  sequences can be mutated to match the germline sequences to reduce the risk of immunogenicity when the antibody is administered. Germline DNA sequences for human  $V_H$  and  $V_L$  genes are known in the art (see e.g., the "Vbase" human germline sequence database; see also Kabat, E. A., et al., 1991, Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, Fifth Edition, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, NIH Publication No. 91-3242; Tomlinson et al., J. Mol. Biol. 227:776-798, 1992; and Cox et al., Eur. J. Immunol. 24:827-836, 1994).

Another type of amino acid substitution that may be made is to remove potential proteolytic sites in the antibody. Such sites may occur in a CDR or framework region of a variable domain or in the constant region of an antibody. Substitution of cysteine residues and removal of proteolytic sites may decrease the risk of heterogeneity in the antibody product and thus increase its homogeneity. Another type of amino acid substitution is to eliminate asparagine-glycine pairs, which form potential deamidation sites, by altering one or both of the residues. In another example, the C-terminal lysine of the heavy chain of an Trop-2 antibody of the invention can be cleaved. In various

embodiments of the invention, the heavy and light chains of the Trop-2 antibodies may optionally include a signal sequence.

Once DNA fragments encoding the VH and VL segments of the present invention are obtained, these DNA fragments can be further manipulated by standard recombinant DNA techniques, for example to convert the variable region genes to full-length antibody chain genes, to Fab fragment genes, or to a scFv gene. In these manipulations, a VL- or VH-encoding DNA fragment is operatively linked to another DNA fragment encoding another protein, such as an antibody constant region or a flexible linker. The term "operatively linked", as used in this context, is intended to mean that the two DNA fragments are joined such that the amino acid sequences encoded by the two DNA fragments remain in-frame.

The isolated DNA encoding the VH region can be converted to a full-length heavy chain gene by operatively linking the VH-encoding DNA to another DNA molecule encoding heavy chain constant regions (CH1, CH2 and CH3). The sequences of human heavy chain constant region genes are known in the art (see e.g., Kabat, E. A., et al., 1991, Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, Fifth Edition, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, NIH Publication No. 91-3242) and DNA fragments encompassing these regions can be obtained by standard PCR amplification. The heavy chain constant region can be an IgG1, IgG2, IgG3, IgG4, IgA, IgE, IgM or IgD constant region, but most preferably is an IgG1 or IgG2 constant region. The IgG constant region sequence can be any of the various alleles or allotypes known to occur among different individuals, such as Gm(1), Gm(2), Gm(3), and Gm(17). These allotypes represent naturally occurring amino acid substitution in the IgG1 constant regions. For a Fab fragment heavy chain gene, the V<sub>H</sub>-encoding DNA can be operatively linked to another DNA molecule encoding only the heavy chain CH1 constant region. The CH1 heavy chain constant region may be derived from any of the heavy chain genes.

The isolated DNA encoding the VL region can be converted to a full-length light chain gene (as well as a Fab light chain gene) by operatively linking the VL-encoding DNA to another DNA molecule encoding the light chain constant region, CL. The sequences of human light chain constant region genes are known in the art (see e.g., Kabat, E. A., et al., 1991, Sequences of Proteins of Immunological Interest, Fifth Edition,

U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, NIH Publication No. 91-3242) and DNA fragments encompassing these regions can be obtained by standard PCR amplification. The light chain constant region can be a kappa or lambda constant region. The kappa constant region may be any of the various alleles known to occur  
5 among different individuals, such as Inv(1), Inv(2), and Inv(3). The lambda constant region may be derived from any of the three lambda genes.

To create a scFv gene, the VH- and VL-encoding DNA fragments are operatively linked to another fragment encoding a flexible linker, e.g., encoding the amino acid sequence (Gly<sub>4</sub>-Ser)<sub>3</sub>, (SEQ ID NO: 80) such that the VH and VL sequences can be  
10 expressed as a contiguous single-chain protein, with the VL and VH regions joined by the flexible linker (See e.g., Bird et al., 1988, Science 242:423-426; Huston et al., 1988, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 85:5879-5883; McCafferty et al., 1990, Nature 348:552-554. The single chain antibody may be monovalent, if only a single VH and VL are used, bivalent, if two VH and VL are used, or polyvalent, if more than two VH and VL are  
15 used. Bispecific or polyvalent antibodies may be generated that bind specifically to Trop-2 and to another molecule.

In another embodiment, a fusion antibody or immunoadhesin may be made that comprises all or a portion of an Trop-2 antibody of the invention linked to another polypeptide. In another embodiment, only the variable domains of the Trop-2 antibody  
20 are linked to the polypeptide. In another embodiment, the VH domain of an Trop-2 antibody is linked to a first polypeptide, while the VL domain of an Trop-2 antibody is linked to a second polypeptide that associates with the first polypeptide in a manner such that the VH and VL domains can interact with one another to form an antigen binding site. In another preferred embodiment, the VH domain is separated from the VL  
25 domain by a linker such that the VH and VL domains can interact with one another. The VH-linker- VL antibody is then linked to the polypeptide of interest. In addition, fusion antibodies can be created in which two (or more) single-chain antibodies are linked to one another. This is useful if one wants to create a divalent or polyvalent antibody on a single polypeptide chain, or if one wants to create a bispecific antibody.

30 In other embodiments, other modified antibodies may be prepared using Trop-2 antibody encoding nucleic acid molecules. For instance, "Kappa bodies" (Ill et al., Protein Eng. 10:949-57, 1997), "Minibodies" (Martin et al., EMBO J., 13:5303-9, 1994),

“Diabodies” (Holliger et al., Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 90:6444-6448, 1993), or “Janusins” (Traunecker et al., EMBO J. 10:3655-3659, 1991 and Traunecker et al., Int. J. Cancer (Suppl.) 7:51-52, 1992) may be prepared using standard molecular biological techniques following the teachings of the specification.

5 Bispecific antibodies or antigen binding fragments can be produced by a variety of methods including fusion of hybridomas or linking of Fab' fragments. See, e.g., Songsivilai & Lachmann, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 79:315-321, 1990, Kostelny et al., J. Immunol. 148:1547-1553, 1992. In addition, bispecific antibodies may be formed as “diabodies” or “Janusins.” In some embodiments, the bispecific antibody binds to two  
10 different epitopes of Trop-2. In some embodiments, the modified antibodies described above are prepared using one or more of the variable domains or CDR regions from the Trop-2 antibodies provided herein.

Representative materials of the present invention were deposited in the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) on April 26, 2012. Vector having ATCC Accession No.  
15 PTA-12872 is a polynucleotide encoding a humanized Trop-2 antibody heavy chain variable region, and vector having ATCC Accession No. PTA-12871 is a polynucleotide encoding a humanized Trop-2 antibody light chain variable region. The deposits were made under the provisions of the Budapest Treaty on the International Recognition of the Deposit of Microorganisms for the Purpose of Patent Procedure and Regulations  
20 thereunder (Budapest Treaty). This assures maintenance of a viable culture of the deposit for 30 years from the date of deposit. The deposit will be made available by ATCC under the terms of the Budapest Treaty, and subject to an agreement between Pfizer, Inc. and ATCC, which assures permanent and unrestricted availability of the progeny of the culture of the deposit to the public upon issuance of the pertinent U.S.  
25 patent or upon laying open to the public of any U.S. or foreign patent application, whichever comes first, and assures availability of the progeny to one determined by the U.S. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks to be entitled thereto according to 35 U.S.C. Section 122 and the Commissioner's rules pursuant thereto (including 37 C.F.R. Section 1.14 with particular reference to 886 OG 638).

30 The assignee of the present application has agreed that if a culture of the materials on deposit should die or be lost or destroyed when cultivated under suitable conditions, the materials will be promptly replaced on notification with another of the



same. Availability of the deposited material is not to be construed as a license to practice the invention in contravention of the rights granted under the authority of any government in accordance with its patent laws.

The following examples are offered for illustrative purposes only, and are not intended to limit the scope of the present invention in any way. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and fall within the scope of the appended claims.

## Examples

### Example 1: Antibody Binding Affinity Determination for Recombinant Anti-Trop-2 Mouse Antibodies

The affinities of anti-Trop-2 mouse antibodies generated from hybridomas were measured on a surface plasmon resonance Biacore™ 2000 or 3000 biosensor equipped with a research-grade CM5 sensor chip (Biacore™ AB, Uppsala, Sweden – now GE Healthcare). Anti-mouse IgG was first amine coupled to the CM5 sensor surface. Various anti-Trop-2 mouse IgGs were then captured by anti-mouse IgG. Monomeric Trop-2 extracellular domain prepared from papain digestion of Trop-2-Fc fusion protein was then injected as the analyte at 3 fold dilution series. Affinity of anti-Trop-2 mouse antibodies ranges from 7.5 to 31.8 nM. Table 4.

Table 4

Antibody	ka(1/Ms)	kd(1/s)	KD(nM) huTrop-2
3E9	1.83E+05	2.38E-03	13.0
6G11	2.70E+05	8.60E-03	31.8
7E6	1.60E+05	1.19E-03	7.5
15E2	1.61E+05	4.07E-03	25.3
18B1	4.37E+05	1.04E-02	23.8

### Example 2: Domain Mapping of Recombinant Anti-Trop-2 Mouse Antibodies

Domain mapping was done by swapping the Trop-2 extracellular domains with either Trop-1 (EpCAM) or mouse Trop-2 equivalent regions. See Figures 4-5. Anti-Trop-2 antibodies 3E9, 6G11, 7E6, and 18B1 (expressed as recombinant mouse IgG2a) do not bind either human Trop-1 or mouse Trop-2 while 15E2 binds mouse Trop-2 but

not human Trop-1. These hybrid proteins were expressed as human Fc fusion proteins in 293F cells. Binding of anti-Trop-2 antibodies to these domain hybrids were determined by Biacore. Recognition of certain human Trop-2 domains by anti-Trop-2 antibodies were defined when domain swapping results in loss or reduction in binding.

- 5 Anti-Trop-2 antibody clones 3E9, 7E6, and 15E2 bind to domains 3 and 4 while clones 6G11 and 18B1 bind to domain 1. Table 5. Definition of different domains of Trop-2 can be found, e.g., in Chong et al., J. Biol. Chem. 276(8):5804-13, 2001.

Table 5

Binding of anti-Trop-2 antibodies to different Trop-2 domains					
	domain replacement	domain 1	domain 2	domain 3	domain 4
3E9	hTrop1	-	-	+	+
	mTrop-2	-	-	+/-	+
6G11	hTrop1	+	-	-	-
	mTrop-2	+	-	-	-
7E6	hTrop1	-	-	+	+
	mTrop-2	-	-	-	+
15E2	hTrop1	-	-	+	+/-
	mTrop-2	-	-	+/-	-
18B1	hTrop1	+	-	-	-
	mTrop-2	+	-	-	-

- 10 + indicates domain replacement results in loss of binding  
 +/- indicates domain replacement results in decrease of binding  
 - indicates domain replacement dose not affect binding

### Example 3: *In Vivo* Efficacy Studies With Colo205 Xenograft Model

- 15 *In vivo* efficacy studies of Anti-Trop-2 mouse IgGs were performed with target-expressing colo205 xenograft model. One million colo205 colon cancer cells were implanted subcutaneously into 5-8 weeks old nu/nu mice (day 0). Animals were randomized by body weight the next day (day 1) into different treatment cohorts (control IgG, 7E6, 15E2, or 18B1 group; n=10/group). 20mg/kg of anti-Trop-2 antibodies from
- 20 different treatment cohorts and control mIgG were administered through bolus tail vein injection three times a week for total 12 doses. All experimental animals were monitored for body weight changes daily. Tumor volume was measured twice a week by a caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x

width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. TGI (% tumor growth inhibition) was determined as [1-tumor sizes (treatment group)/tumor size (control group)] x 100. Table 6 and Figure 1 show that anti-Trop-2 antibodies 7E6, 15E2, and 18B1 inhibit Colo205 xenograft tumor growth *in vivo*.

5

Table 6

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on day 43	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	673.0	0%
7E6	163.8	76%
15E2	582.0	14%
18B1	423.5	37%

#### Example 4: *In Vivo* Efficacy Studies With A431 Xenograft Model

##### a) *Inhibition of A431 Xenograft Tumor Growth by Anti-Trop-2 antibodies 7E6, 15E2, and 18B1*

10

*In vivo* efficacy studies of anti-Trop-2 mouse IgGs were performed with target-expressing A431 xenograft model. Two million A431 epidermoid cancer cells were implanted subcutaneously into 5-8 weeks old nu/nu mice until the tumor sizes reached around 100 mm<sup>3</sup>. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes and dosing was done through bolus tail vein injection. Anti-Trop-2 antibodies were expressed as recombinant mouse IgG2a antibodies from 293F transient expression. 20mg/kg of anti-Trop-2 antibodies (18B1, 15E2, and 7E6 recombinant mIgG2a) or control IgG were administered through bolus tail vein injection twice a week for total 6 doses. Tumor volume was measured twice a week by a caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. TGI (% tumor growth inhibition) was determined as [1-tumor sizes (treatment group)/tumor size (control group)] x 100. Table 7A and Figure 2A show that anti-Trop 2 antibodies 7E6, 15E2, and 18B1 inhibit A431 xenograft tumor growth *in vivo*.

25

Table 7A

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1814.8	0%
7E6	770.7	58%
15E2	953.6	47%
18B1	875.5	52%

b) *Inhibition of A431 Xenograft Tumor Growth by Anti-Trop-2 antibody 7E6 in Dose-Response Study*

5 Using the same xenograft model as described in Example 4a above, various doses of anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibody (5, 10, and 20 mg/kg) or 20 mg/kg control IgG were administered through bolus tail vein injection twice a week for total 6 doses. Table 7B and Figure 2B show inhibition of A431 xenograft tumor growth *in vivo* by various doses of 7E6.

10

Table 7B

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1814.8	0%
7E6-5mg/kg	913.9	50%
7E6-10mg/kg	897.7	51%
7E6-20mg/kg	875.5	52%

c) *Inhibition of A431 Xenograft Tumor Growth by Anti-Trop-2 antibodies 6G11, 7E6, and 18B1*

15 Similarly, 20 mg/kg of anti-Trop-2 antibodies (6G11, 7E6, and 18B1 and control IgG), all expressed recombinantly as mIgG2s, were administered through bolus tail vein injection once a week for a total of 3 doses in A431 xenograft model as described in

- 107 -

Example 4a). Table 7C and Figure 2C show that anti-Trop 2 antibodies 6G11, 7E6, and 18B1 inhibit A431 xenograft tumor growth *in vivo*.

Table 7C

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1044.0	0%
6G11	444.8	57%
7E6	561.0	46%
18B1	477.6	54%

5

#### Example 5: Antibody Binding Affinity Determination for Humanized Anti-Trop-2 Antibodies – 7E6

The affinities of chimeric and humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibodies were measured on a surface plasmon resonance Biacore™ T200 biosensor equipped with a research-grade CM4 sensor chip (Biacore™ AB, Uppsala, Sweden – now GE Healthcare). The human Trop-2-hFc or cynomolgus monkey Trop-2-hFc proteins were captured on the CM5 EDA chip 37 sensor surface coupled with anti-human Fc. Chimeric and humanized 7E6 recombinant Fab fragments were injected as 3 fold dilution series. Tables 8A and 8B show affinity measurement of humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibodies to human Trop-2 protein and cynomolgus monkey, respectively.

15

Table 8A

Antibody	ka(1/Ms)	kd(1/s)	KD(nM) to huTrop-2
mouse7E6	1.66E+05	1.34E-03	8.08
h7E6-WT	1.39E+05	2.94E-03	21.10
h7E6_SVG	9.76E+04	4.35E-04	4.46
h7E6_L	1.30E+05	1.50E-04	1.15
h7E6_SVGL	1.31E+05	3.27E-05	0.25

Table 8B

Antibody	ka(1/Ms)	kd(1/s)	KD(nM) to cynoTrop-2
mouse7E6	1.45E+05	2.40E-03	16.50
h7E6-WT	1.44E+05	6.35E-03	44.00
h7E6_SVG	2.65E+05	1.89E-03	7.00
h7E6_L	1.26E+05	3.35E-04	2.66
h7E6_SVGL	1.30E+05	7.42E-05	0.57

#### Example 6: Antibody Binding Affinity Determination for Humanized Anti-Trop-2 Antibodies – 6G11

- 5 The affinities of humanized 6G11 antibodies were measured on a surface plasmon resonance Biacore™ 2000 biosensor equipped with a research-grade CM5 sensor chip (Biacore™ AB, Uppsala, Sweden – now GE Healthcare). Human Trop-2-mFc protein was captured on the CM5 chip coupled with anti-mouse Fc. Human 6G11\_WT or Human 6G11\_FKG\_SF chimeric Fab fragments were injected as 3 fold
- 10 dilution series. Table 9 shows affinity measurement of humanized anti-Trop-2 6G11 antibodies to human Trop-2 protein.

Table 9

Antibody	ka(1/Ms)	kd(1/s)	KD(nM) to huTrop-2
h6G11_WT	3.60E+05	9.60E-03	27.0
h6G11_FKG_SF	6.40E+05	3.80E-04	0.6

#### Example 7: Flow Cytometry of Mouse and Humanized Anti-Trop-2 Antibodies on Trop-2 Positive and Negative Tumor Cells

##### a) 7E6

- Binding of mouse chimeric and humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibodies (expressed in human IgG1 subtype) were assessed on Trop-2 expressing (A431 and
- 20 Colo205) and non-expressing (SW620) cells by flow cytometry. For A431 cell staining, 200,000 cells were incubated with 0.5 ug antibody in 100uL binding buffer (PBS (Phosphate Buffered Saline) + 0.5% BSA (Bovine Serum Albumin)), followed by incubation with Dylight488-conjugated goat anti-human (Fab')2-specific secondary antibody from Jackson immunoresearch Laboratories (West Grove, PA). For Colo205

and SW620 cells, 300,000 cells were used with 1 ug of primary antibody, followed by AlexaFluor 647 anti-human (Fab')<sub>2</sub>-specific secondary antibody from Jackson immunoresearch Laboratories (West Grove, PA). Table 10 shows at least about 93% binding on Trop-2 positive tumor cells by mouse 7E6 and humanized 7E6 antibodies.

5

Table 10

	A431 (Trop-2+++)		Colo205 (Trop-2 +)		SW620 (Trop-2 -)	
Antibody	MFI	% positive	MFI	% positive	MFI	% positive
2nd Ab only	1049	3.4	183	3.9	154	2.0
mouse 7E6	103000	94.0	2258	99.0	149	2.2
h7E6_WT	102000	94.8	1761	99.0	143	2.1
h7E6_SVG	121000	96.7	2425	100.0	139	2.4
h7E6_L	110000	95.1	2469	100.0	158	2.5
h7E6_N	149000	98.6	2698	100.0	151	2.3
h7E6_SVGL	107000	93.1	2425	100.0	135	2.6
h7E6_SVGN	128000	98.1	2734	100.0	140	2.5

## b) 6G11

Similar to Example 7a), binding of chimeric mouse and humanized anti-Trop-2 6G11 antibodies (expressed in human IgG1 subtype) were assessed on Trop-2 expressing (A431 and Colo205) and non-expressing (SW620) cells by flow cytometry. 300,000 cells were used with 1 ug of primary antibody, followed by AlexaFluor 647 anti-human (Fab')<sub>2</sub>-specific secondary antibody. Table 11 shows at least about 99% binding on Trop-2 positive tumor cells by mouse 6G11 and humanized 6G11 antibodies.

15

Table 11

	A431 (Trop-2+++)		Colo205 (Trop-2 +)		SW620 (Trop-2 -)	
Antibody	MFI	% positive	MFI	% positive	MFI	% positive
2nd Ab only	718	4.9	183	3.9	154	2.0
mouse 6G11	16204	99.9	1667	100.0	134	2.5
h6G11_WT	19573	99.9	1716	99.0	154	3.9
h6G11_FKG_SF	20254	99.9	2064	100.0	157	2.5

#### Example 8: ADCC Activity of Chimeric and Humanized Anti-Trop-2 7E6 hlgG1 Antibodies on A431 Cells

The ADCC (antibody-dependent cytotoxicity) activity of chimeric mouse (h7E6-WT) and humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 human IgG1 antibodies (h7E6\_SVG (VH region), h7E6\_L (VL region), and h7E6-SVGL (both VH and VL regions)) were determined with the cytoTox 96 non-radioactive cytotoxicity assay kit (Promega, Madison WI). Target expressing A431 cells were seeded at 10,000 cells/well the day before the assay. Donor PBMCs (Cryopreserved Peripheral Blood Mononuclear Cells) were isolated through Ficoll gradient and cultured overnight at 37°C in X-VIVO medium (Lonza, Wakersville, MO). The antibodies were added to the wells the following day at concentrations indicated in Figure 3, followed by the addition of 500,000 PBMC cells (E:T=50:1) in RPMI+5% FBS (Fetal Bovine Serum). Anti-EGFR (Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor) antibody (ERBITUX®, Imclone, Bridgewater, NJ) was used as a positive control for the assay. The plates were then incubated at 37°C for 4 hours. At 15 and half hours time point, 20 uL of the lysis solution was added to the target cells alone wells. After spinning the plate at 8000 rpm for 3 minutes, 50uL of supernatants were transferred to another plate. 50ul of substrate was then added to each well and the plate was incubated at room temperature for 30 minutes in the dark. The reaction was stopped by adding 50 uL of stop solution from Promega (Madison, WI) to each well. 20 The plates were then read at 490 nm with a spectrophotometer (Molecular Devices, Sunnyvale, CA). Percentages (%) of specific lysis were calculated with the following formula:

% specific lysis = (treatment LDH (Lactate Dehydrogenase) release - target cell spontaneous LDH release - effector cell spontaneous LDH release) / (target cell maximum LDH release - target cell spontaneous LDH release) x 100

Figure 3 shows that both chimeric mouse and humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 IgG1 antibodies induced ADCC killing in A431 cells.

#### Example 9: Cytotoxicity of Anti-Trop-2-ADCs in Trop-2 Positive Cells

Chimeric mouse (6G11 and 7E6) and humanized anti-Trop-2 (h7E6-SVG, h7E6-SVGL, and h7E6-SVGN) antibodies were expressed as human IgG1 subtypes engineered with glutamine-containing transglutaminase ("Q") tags (e.g., TG1, LCQ03, and TG6 correspond to SEQ ID NOs:75, (LLQGG); 78 (GGLLQGA), and 79 (LLQGA),



respectively) and conjugated with AcLys-vcMMAD (Acetyl-Lysine-Valine-Citrulline-MMAD), aminocaproyl-vc-PABC-MMAD (aminocaproyl-Valine-Citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl-MMAD), or AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD (Acetyl-Lysine-Valine-Citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl-MMAD) as indicated in Table 12. In one instance, the transglutaminase tags can be engineered at the light chain or heavy chain C-terminus of the antibody; in other instance, the transglutaminase tag (e.g., Q) is engineered at another site of the antibody, such as at position 297 of the human IgG (Kabat numbering scheme). For example, the wild-type amino acid asparagine (N) is substituted with glutamine at position 297 of the Trop-2 antibody (N297Q). Anti-Trop-2 antibody conjugation to MMAD was then achieved via microbial transglutaminase-catalyzed transamidation reaction between the anti-Trop-2 antibody carrying a glutamine-containing tag at the specific site (e.g., carboxyl terminus or amino terminus of the heavy chain or light chain, position 297, or at another site of the antibody) and an amine-containing derivative of the payload (e.g., MMAD). In some instances, the wild-type amino acid lysine at the carboxyl terminus (position 447 in accordance with Kabat numbering scheme) was deleted and replaced with the Q-tag. In other instances, the wild-type amino acid lysine at position 222, 340, or 370 (in accordance with Kabat numbering scheme) was replaced with amino acid arginine ("K222R", "K340R", or "K370R"). For example, the K222R substitution was found to have the surprising effect of resulting in more homogenous antibody and payload conjugate, better intermolecular crosslinking between the antibody and the payload, and/or significant decrease in interchain crosslinking with the glutamine tag on the C terminus of the antibody light chain. In the transamidation reaction, the glutamine on the antibody acted as an acyl donor, and the amine-containing compound acted as an acyl acceptor (amine donor). Purified anti-Trop-2 antibody in the concentration of 1.67 – 4.04  $\mu$ M was incubated with a 20 – 100 M excess acyl acceptor, ranging between 167 – 404  $\mu$ M, in the presence of 0.225 – 0.545% (w/v) *Streptoverticillium mobaraense* transglutaminase (ACTIVA™, Ajinomoto, Japan) in 150 – 900 mM NaCl, and 25 mM MES, HEPES [4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazineethanesulfonic acid] or Tris HCl buffer at pH range 6.2 – 8.8. The reaction conditions were adjusted for individual acyl acceptor derivatives, and the optimal efficiency and specificity were typically observed for 2.87  $\mu$ M antibody, 287  $\mu$ M derivative, and 0.378% (w/v) transglutaminase in 150 mM NaCl, 25 mM Tris HCl, pH

8.8. Following incubation at room temperature for 2.5 hours, the antibody was purified on MabSelect resin (GE Healthcare, Waukesha, WI) using standard affinity chromatography methods known to persons skilled in the art, such as commercial affinity chromatography from GE Healthcare.

- 5 Target expressing (A431, BxPC3, CAPAN-2 and Colo205) or non-expressing (SW620) cells were seeded on white walled clear bottom plates at 2000 cells/well for 24 hours before treatment. Cells were treated with 4 fold serially diluted antibody-drug conjugates in triplicates. Cell viability was determined by CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Luminescent Cell Viability Assay 96 (Promega, Madison WI) 96 hours after treatment. Relative cell
- 10 viability was determined as percentage of untreated control. IC<sub>50</sub> was calculated by Prism software. Table 12 shows that chimeric mouse and humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibodies conjugated to MMAD through transglutaminase tag exert potent cell killing activity in Trop-2 expressing cells.

Table 12

			A431(Trop-2+++)		BxPC3(Trop-2++)		CAPAN-2(Trop-2+/++)		Colo205 (Trop-2+)		SW620 (Trop-2-)	
Name	conjugate	Loading	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> ug/mL	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> ug/mL	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> ug/mL	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (ug/mL)	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> ug/mL	Ab-IC <sub>50</sub> (nM)
6G11-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.86	0.030	0.197					0.379	2.525		
7E6-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.87	0.016	0.109	0.027	0.179	2.320	15.467	0.152	1.011	14.180	94.533
h7E6-WT-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.79	0.022	0.144	0.025	0.169	1.956	13.040	0.445	2.969	10.330	68.867
h7E6-L-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.85	0.020	0.132	0.035	0.232	2.027	13.513	0.082	0.549	8.535	56.900
h7E6-N-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.87	0.024	0.163			2.021	13.473	0.100	0.668	11.150	74.333

- 113 -

h7E6-SVG-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.88	0.016	0.105	0.031	0.206	1.659	11.060	0.118	0.787	10.680	71.200
h7E6-SVGL-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.85	0.018	0.120			2.440	16.267	0.052	0.345	10.800	72.000
h7E6-SVGN-TG1-vcMMA D	AcLys-vcMMA D	1.87	0.023	0.153	0.051	0.337	2.009	13.393	0.083	0.552	10.410	69.400
NNC-TG1-vcMMA D	Aminocapryl-vcMMA D	1.83			7.260	48.400			22.790	151.933	22.990	153.267
7E6-TG1-vcMMA D	Aminocapryl-vcMMA D	1.87			0.030	0.197					24.180	161.200
h7E6-SVG-TG1-vcMMA D	Aminocapryl-vcMMA D	1.91			0.034	0.229					25.310	168.733
7E6-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	1.87			0.008	0.053						
7E6-K222R-LCQ3-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	0.74			0.008	0.054						
h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	1.93	0.011	0.072	0.032	0.214			0.209	1.393		
h7E6SVG-K222R-LCQ3-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD	1.90	0.011	0.07	0.014	0.092			2.681	17.873		

MMAD												
------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### Example 10: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induced Long Term Tumor Regression in BxPC3 Xenograft Model

*In vivo* efficacy studies of control antibody hIgG1-TG1-vcMMAD (“NNCTG1-vcMMAD”) and chimeric anti-Trop-2 antibody 7E6 conjugated with 1) LCQ03-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD K222R variant or 2) TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD via transglutaminase were performed with target-expressing BxPC3 xenograft model. For h7E6-K222R-LCQ03-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD variant conjugate, the wild-type amino acid lysine in the anti-Trop-2 antibody is substituted with amino acid arginine (i.e., K222R) at position 222 in accordance with Kabat numbering scheme. LCQ03 corresponds to SEQ ID NO:78 (GGLLQGG), and TG6 corresponds to SEQ ID NO:79 (LLQGA). General method of conjugating Trop-2 antibodies using transglutaminase tags LCQ03 and TG6 is described in Example 9. Two million BxPC3 cancer cells were implanted subcutaneously into 5-8 weeks old CB17 SCID mice until the tumor sizes reached around 250 mm<sup>3</sup>. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes, and dosing was done through bolus tail vein injection. 3 mg/kg of control hIgG1, chimeric h7E6-K222R-LCQ03-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD variant, or chimeric 7E6-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD were administered through bolus tail vein injection once for total of 1 dose. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Single dose of the chimeric anti-Trop-2 antibody 7E6 conjugated with AcLys-vc-PABC-MMAD resulted in long term tumor regression. See Figure 8.

#### Example 11: Cytotoxicity of Anti-Trop-2-ADCs in Trop-2 Positive Cells

Negative control (NNC) and humanized anti-Trop-2 (h7E6SVG) antibodies were expressed as human IgG1 subtypes engineered with glutamine-containing transglutaminase tags at the C-terminus of heavy chain (TG6 (SEQ ID NO: 79)), light chain (LCQ03 (SEQ ID NO: 78) and LCQ04 (SEQ ID NO: 79)) or with N297Q/K222R mutations in the CH2/Hinge domains of heavy chain and conjugated with AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (“vc0101” or Acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl-(2-

methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-{(2*S*)-2-[(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-  
 {(1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-yl)ethyl]amino}propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-  
 oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide)) or aminocaproyl-PEG6 (Propylene Glycol)<sub>6</sub>-  
 propionyl)-MMAD as indicated. 2-methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-{(2*S*)-2-  
 5 [(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-{(1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-  
 yl)ethyl]amino}propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide  
 is a novel auristatin, as described in U.S. Application Nos: 61/561,255 and 61/676,423.  
 Method of conjugating Trop-2 antibodies using transglutaminase tags is described in  
 Example 9. Target expressing or non-expressing (SW620) cells were seeded on white  
 10 walled clear bottom plates at 2000 (A431, BxPC3, NCI-H292, NCI-H1650, MDA-MB-468  
 and SW620), 2500 (Calu-3) or 3000 (OVCAR3 and SKBR3) cells per well for 24 hours  
 before treatment. Cells were treated with 4 fold serially diluted antibody-drug  
 conjugates in triplicates. Cell viability was determined by CellTiter-Glo<sup>®</sup> Luminescent  
 Cell Viability Assay 96 (Promega, Madison, WI) 96 hours after treatment. Relative cell  
 15 viability was determined as percentage of untreated control. IC<sub>50</sub> was calculated by  
 GraphPad Prism 5 software and expressed as concentration (nM) of total Ab. Table 13  
 shows that humanized anti-Trop-2 7E6 antibodies conjugated to vc0101 or PEG6-  
 MMAD through transglutaminase tag exert potent cell killing activity in Trop-2  
 expressing cells.

20

Table 13

Cell name	Cell type	Trop2 expression	h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 Ab IC50 (nM)	h7E6SVG-G-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD Ab IC50 (nM)	h7E6SVG-LCQ03/K222R-vc0101 Ab IC50 (nM)	h7E6SVG-LCQ04/K222R-vc0101 Ab IC50 (nM)	NNC-TG6-vc0101 Ab IC50 (nM)	NNC-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD Ab IC50 (nM)
A431	Epidermoid carcinoma	+++	0.12	0.07	0.03			>267
BxPC3	Pancreas adenocarcinoma	++	0.32	0.03	0.13	0.11		
NCI-H292	Mucoepidermoid pulmonary carcinoma	++	0.63	0.03		1.84		

Calu-3	Lung adenocarcinoma	++	0.53	0.50		1.51		
NCI-H1650	Lung bronchoalveolar carcinoma	++	1.92	0.38			>267	>267
OVCAR3	Ovary adenocarcinoma	+++	0.56	0.98			168.5	>267
MDA-MB-468	Mammary adenocarcinoma	++	0.77	0.19			>267	>267
SKBR3	Mammary adenocarcinoma	+ / ++	0.42	0.08			200.5	>267
Colo205	Colorectal adenocarcinoma	+	32.89	21.15	174.50			
SW620	Colorectal adenocarcinoma	-	156.20	>267	>267	>267	>267	>267

Example 12: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induced Tumor Regression in Pancreatic Tumor BxPC3 Xenograft Model

*In vivo* efficacy studies of Trop-2 ADCs were performed with target-expressing BxPC3 xenograft model. Two million BxPC3 pancreatic cancer cells were implanted subcutaneously into 5-8 weeks old CB17/SCID mice until the tumor sizes reached between 300-400 mm<sup>3</sup>. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes, and single dose of humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with 1) TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (equivalent to TG6-AcLys-vc-0101 as depicted in Figure 9A); 2) N297Q/K222R-PEG6-MMAD ((Propylene Glycol)<sub>6</sub>-propionyl-MMAD); and 3) LCQ04-K222R-vc-PABC0101 (equivalent to LCQ04/K222R-vc0101 as depicted in Figure 9C); LCQ04 corresponds to SEQ ID NO: 79 (LLQGA)) and control conjugates were administered through bolus tail vein injection. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Figures 9A-9C show that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with 1) TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101; 2) N297Q/K222R-PEG6-MMAD; and 3) LCQ04-K222R-vc-PABC0101 resulted in tumor regression in pancreatic tumor BxPC3 xenograft model.

Example 13: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induced Tumor Regression in Colorectal Tumor Colo205 Xenograft Model

*In vivo* efficacy study of Trop-2 ADCs was performed with target-expressing colo205 xenograft model. Three millions of colo205 colon cancer cells were implanted subcutaneously into 5-8 weeks old nu/nu mice until the tumor sizes reached ~300 mm<sup>3</sup>. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes, and single dose of 6mg/kg humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with 1) TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (equivalent to TG6-vc-0101 as depicted in Figure 10); and 2) LCQ03-vc-PABC-0101 having K222R substitution in the hinge/CH2 domains of heavy chain (equivalent to LCQ03/K222R-vc0101 as depicted in Figure10; LCQ03 corresponds to SEQ ID NO: 78 (GGLLQGG)); and control conjugate (IgG-vc-PABC-0101) were administered through bolus tail vein injection. Tumor volume is measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Figure 10 shows that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with 1) TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101; and 2) LCQ03-vc-PABC-0101 having K222R substitution in the hinge/CH2 domains of heavy chain resulted in tumor regression in colorectal tumor Colo205 xenograft model.

Example 14: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induced Tumor Regression in Ovarian PDX Ova196756 Xenograft Model

*In vivo* efficacy study of Trop-2 ADC using humanized anti-Trop2 antibody (h7E6SVG) conjugated with TG6-vc-0101 was performed with target-expressing ovarian cancer patient derived xenograft model (PDX Ova196756). This tumor sample was derived from surgical specimen and propagated in NSG mice (Jackson Laboratories, Bar Harbor, Maine). For efficacy studies, approximately 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> of tumor fragments were implanted subcutaneously into the lateral flanks of CB17/SCID mice. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes once they reached ~400 mm<sup>3</sup>, and a single dose of h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (0.75 mg/kg and 1.5 mg/kg; equivalent to TG6-vc0101 as depicted in Figure 11) and control conjugate (1.5 mg/kg; IgG-vc-PABC-0101 or IgG-vc0101 as depicted in Figure 11) were administered through bolus tail vein injection. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a caliper device and calculated

with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Figures 11 shows that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 resulted in tumor regression in ovarian PDX Ova196756 xenograft model.

5

Example 15: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Shows Superior Efficacy Than Gemcitabine to Induce Tumor Regression in Pan0146 Pancreatic PDX Model

*In vivo* efficacy studies of Trop-2 ADC using humanized anti-Trop-2 antibody (h7E6SVG) conjugated with TG6-vc0101 were performed with target-expressing pancreatic cancer patient derived xenograft model (PDX Pan0146) from Jackson Laboratories (Bar Harbor, Maine). For efficacy studies, 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> of tumor fragments were implanted subcutaneously into the lateral flanks of the animals. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes once they reached ~300 mm<sup>3</sup>, and h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 and the control conjugate were administered through bolus tail vein injection. Figure 12A: Single dose of h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 (shown as h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 in the Figure) and control conjugate were given at doses indicated. Gemcitabine was given at 75 mg/kg twice weekly for a total of 6 doses. Figure 12B: h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 was given at 0.75 mg/kg weekly for 4 doses, 1.5 mg/kg bi-weekly for two doses or 3.0 mg/kg single dose. Gemcitabine was given once weekly at 75 mg/kg for 4 doses. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. The data show that the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 has superior efficacy to gemcitabine to induce tumor regression in Pan0146 pancreatic PDX model and that continuous dosing of h7E6SVG-TG6-AcLys-vc-PABC-0101 resulted in sustained tumor regression in pancreatic PDX Pan0146 xenograft model.

Example 16: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induces Tumor Regression in Pancreatic Pan144607 PDX Model

*In vivo* efficacy study of Trop-2 ADC using humanized anti-Trop-2 antibody (h7E6SVG) conjugated with vc0101 or PEG6MMAD was performed with target-



- 119 -

expressing pancreatic cancer patient derived xenograft model (PDX Pan144607). This tumor sample was derived from surgical specimen and propagated in NSG mice (Jackson Laboratories, Bar Harbor, Maine). For efficacy studies, approximately 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> of tumor fragments were implanted subcutaneously into the lateral flanks of  
5 CB17/SCID mice. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes once they reached ~300 mm<sup>3</sup>, and single dose of 1.5, 3.0 and 6.0 mg/kg h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD and the control conjugate were administered through bolus tail vein injection. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated  
10 before their tumor volumes reach 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Figure 13 shows that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with PEG6-MMAD resulted in tumor regression in pancreatic Pan144607 PDX model.

Example 17: Anti-Trop-2 7E6 Auristatin Conjugate Induces Tumor Regression in  
15 Pancreatic Pan0135 PDX Model

*In vivo* efficacy study of Trop-2 ADC using humanized anti-Trop-2 antibody (h7E6SVG) conjugated with PEG6MMAD was performed with target-expressing pancreatic cancer patient derived xenograft model (PDX Pan0135) from Jackson Laboratories. For efficacy studies, approximately 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> of tumor fragments were  
20 implanted subcutaneously into the lateral flanks of the animals. Animals were randomized by tumor sizes once they reached ~300 mm<sup>3</sup> and 6mg/kg of h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD and the control conjugate were administered through bolus tail vein injection with single dose. Tumor volume was measured once a week by a Caliper device and calculated with the following formula: Tumor volume = (length x  
25 width<sup>2</sup>) / 2. Studies were terminated before their tumor volumes reached 2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. Figure 14 shows that a single dose of the humanized anti-Trop2 antibody conjugated with PEG6-MMAD resulted in tumor regression in pancreatic Pan0135 PDX model.

Example 18: Antibody Binding Affinity Determination for Humanized Anti-Trop-2  
30 Antibodies

Analysis of Fab/human Trop2-ECD (Extracellular Domain) interactions was performed using a Bio-Rad Proteon XPR36 Surface Plasmon Resonance (SPR)

- 120 -

biosensor (Bio-Rad, Hercules, CA) equipped with a GLC sensor chip. The assay temperature was 25°C, and the assay buffer was 10 mM Sodium Phosphate, 150 mM NaCl, 0.05% Tween-20, pH 7.4. An array of amine-coupled Fabs was prepared using the methodology described in Abdiche et al. (Anal. Biochem., 411: 139-151 (2011)). In each analysis cycle, monovalent human Trop2-ECD antigen was flowed at 30  $\mu$ L/min over the immobilized Fabs for 3 minutes followed by a buffer wash for 15 minutes to monitor dissociation of the Fab/Trop2 complex. The sensor surface was regenerated between analysis cycles, using three 18-second injections of a 2:1 mixture (by volume) of Pierce IgG Elution buffer:4 M NaCl (Pierce, Rockford, IL). Binding and regeneration cycles were repeated at human Trop2-ECD concentrations of 6, 30 and 150 nM. The resulting data were fit to a 1:1 Langmuir binding model using the Proteon evaluation software. The results appear in the table below.

Table 14

Sequence	$k_a$ (1/Ms)	$k_d$ (1/s)	$t_{1/2}$ (min)	$K_D$ (nM)
DG (h7E6_SVG)	1.7E+05	6.9E-04	17	4.1
DK (h7E6_SVG20)	< 1.7E+05	1.3E-02	0.88	> 75
DA (h7E6_SVG22)	< 1.8E+05	1.3E-02	0.86	> 75
DL (h7E6_SVG28)	< 2.1E+05	1.6E-02	0.72	> 75
DE (h7E6_SVG30)	< 8.5E+05	6.4E-02	0.18	> 75
DS (h7E6_SVG19)	< 6.0E+05	4.5E-02	0.26	> 75

Although the disclosed teachings have been described with reference to various applications, methods, kits, and compositions, it will be appreciated that various changes and modifications can be made without departing from the teachings herein and the claimed invention below. The foregoing examples are provided to better illustrate the disclosed teachings and are not intended to limit the scope of the teachings presented herein. While the present teachings have been described in terms of these exemplary embodiments, the skilled artisan will readily understand that numerous variations and modifications of these exemplary embodiments are possible without

undue experimentation. All such variations and modifications are within the scope of the current teachings.

5 All references cited herein, including patents, patent applications, papers, text books, and the like, and the references cited therein, to the extent that they are not already, are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety. In the event that one or more of the incorporated literature and similar materials differs from or contradicts this application, including but not limited to defined terms, term usage, described techniques, or the like, this application controls.

10 The foregoing description and Examples detail certain specific embodiments of the invention and describes the best mode contemplated by the inventors. It will be appreciated, however, that no matter how detailed the foregoing may appear in text, the invention may be practiced in many ways and the invention should be construed in accordance with the appended claims and any equivalents thereof.

- 122 -

## Claims

It is claimed:

1. An isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to trophoblast cell-surface antigen-2 (Trop-2), wherein the antibody comprises
- (a) a heavy chain variable (VH) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VH complementary determining region one (CDR1) comprising the sequence SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30), GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36), or GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence VIW<sub>1</sub>TX<sub>1</sub>GX<sub>2</sub>TDYNSALMX<sub>3</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or S; X<sub>2</sub> is S or V; X<sub>3</sub> is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 49), or WTX<sub>1</sub>GX<sub>2</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or S, X<sub>2</sub> is S or V (SEQ ID NO: 50); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence DYDRYTX<sub>1</sub>DY, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is E or M (SEQ ID NO: 82); and/or
- (b) a light chain variable region (VL) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASKSVSTSX<sub>1</sub>YSYMH, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G, L, or N (SEQ ID NO: 63); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56);
2. An isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises:
- a VH region comprising a VH CDR1, VH CDR2, and VH CDR3 of the VH sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 5 or 85; and/or
- a VL region comprising VL CDR1, VL CDR2, and VL CDR3 of the VL sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 3 or 6.
3. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 2, wherein the VH region comprises (i) a VH CDR1 comprising the sequence SYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 30), GGSISSY (SEQ ID NO: 36), or GGSISSYGVH (SEQ ID NO: 37); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence VIWTSGVTDYNSALMG (SEQ ID NO: 38) or WTSGV (SEQ

ID NO: 39); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence DGDYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 35), DYDRYTMDY (SEQ ID NO: 99), or DYDRYTEDY (SEQ ID NO: 100).

4. The antibody or antigen binding fragment of claim 3, wherein the VL region comprises (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASKSVSTSGYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 54) or RASKSVSTSLYSYMH (SEQ ID NO: 57) ; (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence LASNLES (SEQ ID NO: 55); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence QHSRELPYT (SEQ ID NO: 56).

5. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 4, wherein the VH region comprises the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 5, 85 or a variant with one or several conservative amino acid substitutions in residues that are not within a CDR and/or the VL region comprises the amino acid sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 3, 6 or a variant thereof with one or several amino acid substitutions in amino acids that are not within a CDR.

6. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 5, wherein the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 66 and a heavy chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 65 or 102 .

7. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 3, wherein the antibody comprises a VH region produced by the expression vector with ATCC Accession No. PTA-12872.

8. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 4, wherein the antibody comprises a VL region produced by the expression vector with ATCC Accession No. PTA-12871.

9. An isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to domain 3 and domain 4 of human Trop-2 (SEQ ID NO:27) with a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 6.5 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

10. An isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises

- 124 -

(a) a heavy chain variable (VH) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VH complementary determining region one (CDR1) comprising the sequence SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40), GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41), or GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence NIX<sub>1</sub>PSDSYSN<sub>1</sub>YX<sub>2</sub>KFKD wherein X<sub>1</sub> is Y or F; X<sub>2</sub> is Q or K, or X<sub>1</sub>PSDSY wherein X<sub>1</sub> is Y or F (SEQ ID NO: 52); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence GSX<sub>1</sub>FDY wherein X<sub>1</sub> is S or G (SEQ ID NO: 53); and/or

(b) a light chain variable region (VL) region complementary determining regions comprising (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASQTIGT<sub>1</sub>SIH (SEQ ID NO: 59); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence X<sub>1</sub>Q<sub>1</sub>SX<sub>2</sub>SWPFT wherein X<sub>1</sub> is Q or S; X<sub>2</sub> is N or F (SEQ ID NO: 64).

11. An isolated antibody, or an antigen binding fragment thereof, which specifically binds to Trop-2, wherein the antibody comprises:

a VH region comprising a VH CDR1, VH CDR2, and VH CDR3 of the VH sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 13; and/or

a VL region comprising VL CDR1, VL CDR2, and VL CDR3 of the VL sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 12.

12. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 11, wherein the VH region comprises (i) a VH CDR1 comprising the sequence SYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 40), GYTFTSY (SEQ ID NO: 41), or GYTFTSYWIN (SEQ ID NO: 42); (ii) a VH CDR2 comprising the sequence NIFPSDSYSN<sub>1</sub>YK<sub>1</sub>KFKD (SEQ ID NO: 46) or FPSDSY (SEQ ID NO: 47); and (iii) a VH CDR3 comprising the sequence GSGFDY (SEQ ID NO: 48).

13. The antibody or antigen binding fragment of claim 12, wherein the VL region comprises (i) a VL CDR1 comprising the sequence RASQTIGT<sub>1</sub>SIH (SEQ ID NO: 59); (ii) a VL CDR2 comprising the sequence YASESIS (SEQ ID NO: 60); and (iii) a VL CDR3 comprising the sequence SQSFSWPFT (SEQ ID NO: 62).

- 125 -

14. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 13, wherein the VH region comprises the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 13 or a variant with one or several conservative amino acid substitutions in residues that are not within a CDR and/or the VL region comprises the amino acid sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 12 or a variant thereof with one or several amino acid substitutions in amino acids that are not within a CDR.

15. The antibody or the antigen binding fragment of claim 14, wherein the antibody comprises a light chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 68 and a heavy chain comprising the sequence shown in SEQ ID NO: 67.

16. An isolated antibody which specifically binds to Trop-2 and competes with the antibody of claim 2 or 4.

17. The antibody of claim 16, wherein the antibody has a monovalent antibody binding affinity ( $K_D$ ) of about 6.5 nM or less as measured by surface plasmon resonance.

18. The antibody of any one of claims 1-15, wherein the antibody comprises an acyl donor glutamine-containing tag engineered at a specific site.

19. The antibody of claim 18, wherein the tag comprises an amino acid sequence GGLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78), LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79), or LLQ.

20. The antibody of claim 19, wherein the antibody further comprises an amino acid modification at position 222, 340, or 370.

21. The antibody of claim 20, wherein the amino acid modification is a substitution from lysine to arginine.

22. A conjugate of the antibody or the antigen binding fragment of any one of claims 1-15 and 18-21, wherein the antibody or the antigen binding fragment is conjugated to an agent, wherein the agent is selected from the group consisting of a cytotoxic agent, an immunomodulating agent, an imaging agent, a therapeutic protein, a biopolymer, and an oligonucleotide.

23. The conjugate of claim 22, wherein the agent is a cytotoxic agent.

24. The conjugate of claim 23, wherein the cytotoxic agent is MMAD (Monomethyl Auristatin D) or 0101 (2-methylalanyl-*N*-[(3*R*,4*S*,5*S*)-3-methoxy-1-[(2*S*)-2-[(1*R*,2*R*)-1-methoxy-2-methyl-3-oxo-3-[[1*S*)-2-phenyl-1-(1,3-thiazol-2-yl)ethyl]amino}propyl]pyrrolidin-1-yl]-5-methyl-1-oxoheptan-4-yl]-*N*-methyl-L-valinamide).

25. The conjugate of claim 24, wherein the conjugate comprises the formula: antibody-(acyl donor glutamine-containing tag)-(linker)-(cytotoxic agent).

26. The conjugate of claim 25, wherein the acyl donor glutamine-containing tag comprises an amino acid sequence GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78), LLQGA (SEQ NO: 79), LLQ, or LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub>, wherein X<sub>1</sub> is G or P, wherein X<sub>2</sub> is A, G, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>3</sub> is A, G, K, P, or absent, wherein X<sub>4</sub> is G, K, or absent, and wherein X<sub>5</sub> is K or absent (SEQ ID NO: 88), and wherein the linker comprises acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl or amino-PEG6-propionyl.

27. The conjugate of claim 26, wherein the conjugate is selected from the group consisting of 1) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)- (acetyl-lysine-valine-citrulline-*p*-aminobenzyloxycarbonyl (AcLys-VC-PABC))-0101; 2) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD; 3) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; 4) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD; 5) antibody -GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)- (AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; and 6) antibody-GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD.

28. The conjugate of claim 27, wherein the conjugate 1) antibody -GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; 2) antibody-GLLQGG (SEQ ID NO: 78)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD; 3) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; 4) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD; 5) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; or 6) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)- AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD comprises an amino acid substitution from lysine to arginine at position 222.

29. The conjugate of claim 27, wherein the conjugate 1) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; 2) antibody-LLQGA (SEQ ID NO: 79)-



- 127 -

AcLys-VC-PABC-MMAD; 3) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-0101; or 4) antibody-LLQX<sub>1</sub>X<sub>2</sub>X<sub>3</sub>X<sub>4</sub>X<sub>5</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 88)-(AcLys-VC-PABC)-MMAD, wherein the amino acid lysine at the C-terminus of heavy chain of the antibody is deleted.

5           30.    The conjugate of claim 24, wherein the conjugate comprises amino acid substitutions at position N297Q and K222R, a linker comprising amino-PEG6-propionyl, and a cytotoxic agent comprising MMAD.

            31.    A pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of the antibody of any one of claims 1-15 or the conjugate of any one of claims  
10   22-30 and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

            32.    An isolated polynucleotide comprising a nucleotide sequence encoding the antibody of any one of claims 1-15.

            33.    A vector comprising the polynucleotide of claim 32.

            34.    An isolated host cell that recombinantly produces the antibody of any one  
15   of claims 1-15.

            35.    A method of producing an antibody, comprising culturing the host cell of claim 34 under conditions that result in production of the antibody, and isolating the antibody from the host cell or culture.

            36.    A method of treating a condition associated with Trop-2 expression in a  
20   subject comprising administering to a subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition of claim 31.

            37.    The method of claim 36, wherein the condition is a cancer.

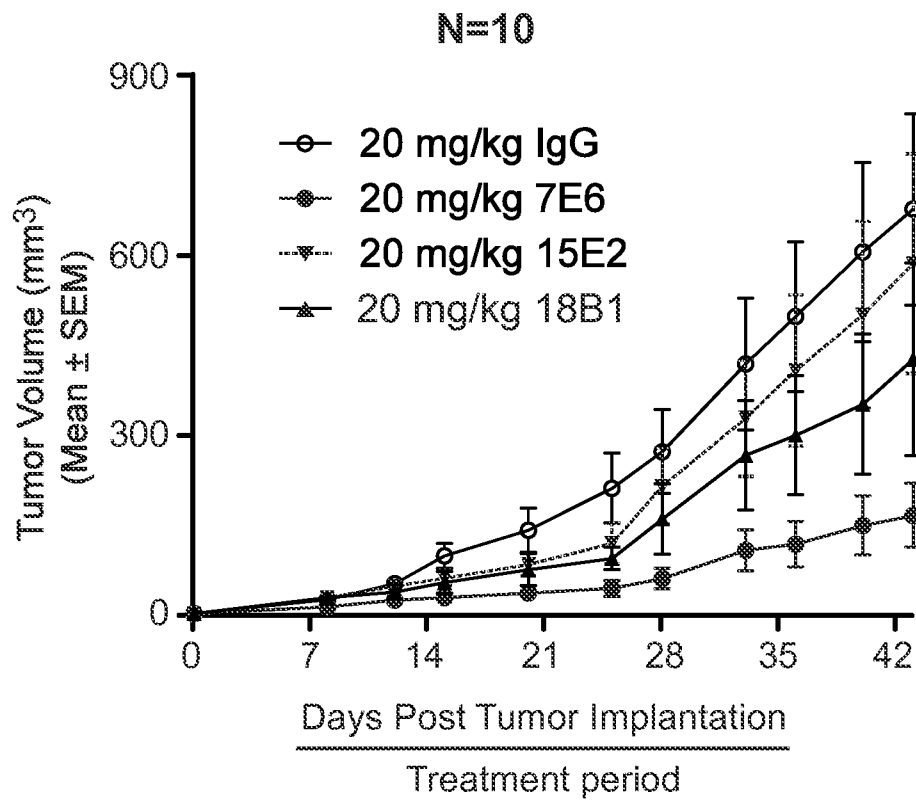
            38.    The method of claim 37, wherein the cancer is selected from the group consisting of bladder, breast, cervical, choriocarcinoma, colon, esophageal, gastric,  
25   glioblastoma, head and neck, kidney, lung, oral, ovarian, pancreatic, prostate, and skin cancer

39. A method of inhibiting tumor growth or progression in a subject who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 to the subject.

5 40. A method of inhibiting metastasis of Trop-2 expressing cancer cells in a subject, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 to the subject.

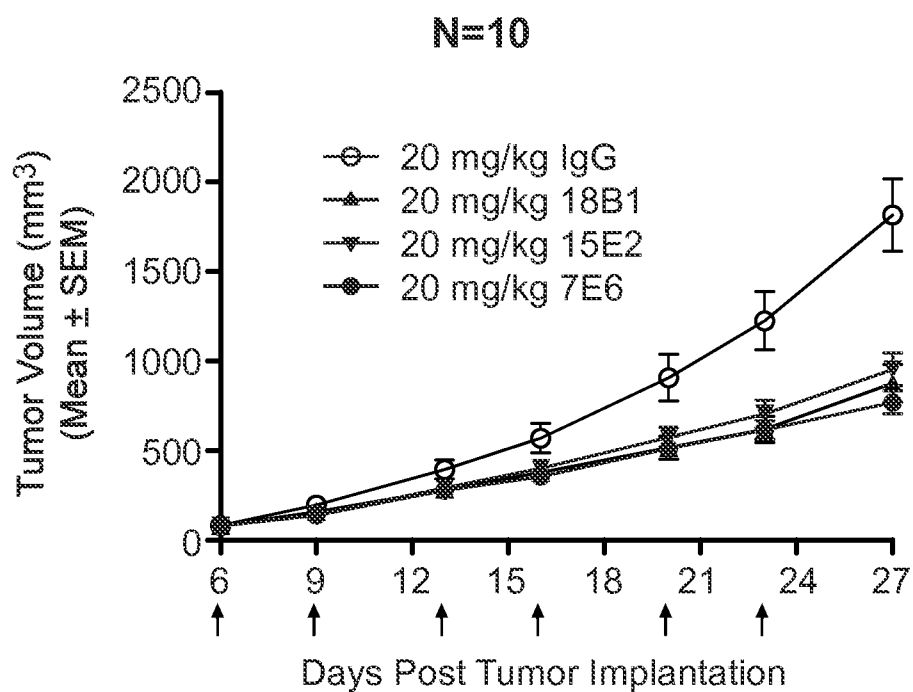
41. A method of induce tumor regression in a subject who has a Trop-2 expressing tumor, comprising administering to the subject in need thereof an effective amount of the pharmaceutical composition of claim 31 to the subject.

1/19

**Figure 1**

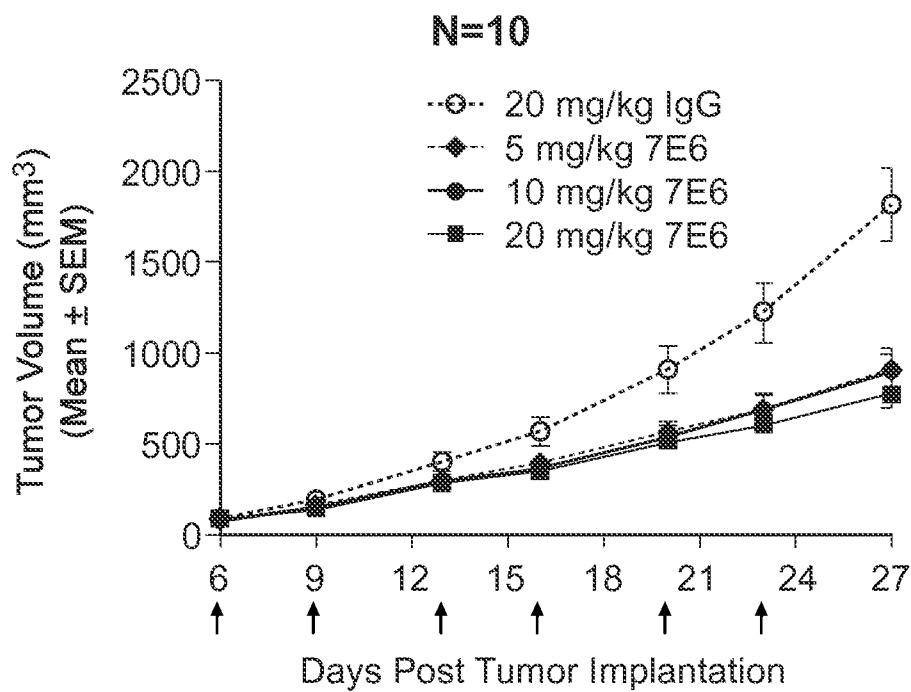
antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on day 43	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	673.0	0%
7E6	163.8	76%
15E2	582.0	14%
18B1	423.5	37%

2/19

**Figure 2A**

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm3) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1814.8	0%
7E6	770.7	58%
15E2	953.6	47%
18B1	875.5	52%

3/19

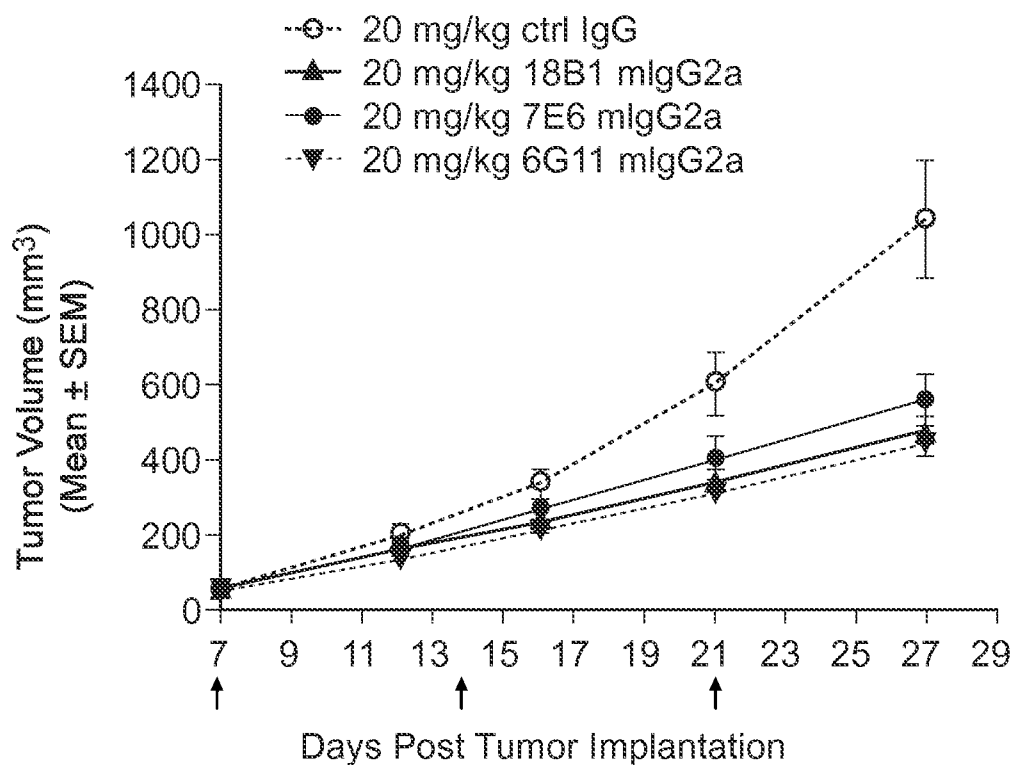
**Figure 2B**

antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm3) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1814.8	0%
7E6-5mg/kg	913.9	50%
7E6-10mg/kg	897.7	51%
7E6-20mg/kg	875.5	52%

4/19

## Figure 2C

N=10

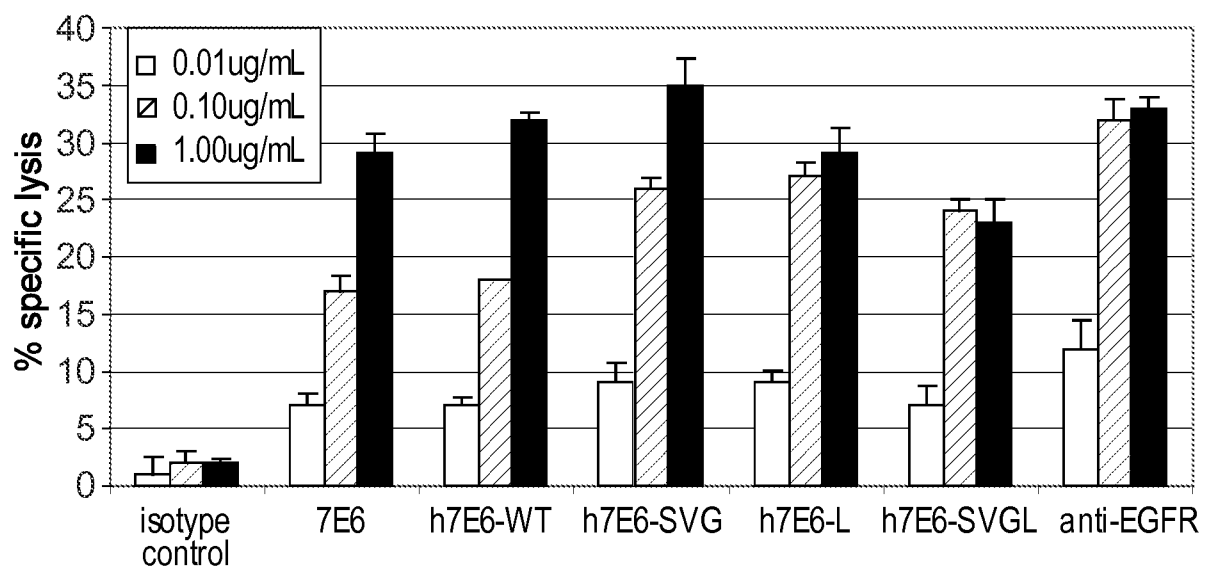


antibody treatment	Mean tumor volume (mm3) on day 27	TGI (Tumor growth inhibition)
control IgG	1044.0	0%
6G11	444.8	57%
7E6	561.0	46%
18B1	477.6	54%

5/19

**Figure 3**

antibody	% specific lysis		
	0.01ug/mL	0.10ug/mL	1.00ug/mL
isotope control	1 ± 1.6	2 ± 1.0	2 ± 0.4
7E6	7 ± 1.1	17 ± 1.4	29 ± 1.8
h7E6-WT	7 ± 0.8	18 ± 0.0	32 ± 0.6
h7E6-SVG	9 ± 1.7	26 ± 0.9	35 ± 2.3
h7E6-L	9 ± 1.1	27 ± 1.3	29 ± 2.3
h7E6-SVGL	7 ± 1.8	24 ± 1.0	23 ± 2.1
anti-EGFR	12 ± 2.4	32 ± 1.7	33 ± 0.9

**ADCC activity of anti-human Trop2 Abs on A431 cells**

6/19

## Figure 4

	1		50
hTrop1	(1)	MA-----PPQVLAFGLLAAATATFAAAQEECV	CENYKAVNCFVNNN
hTrop2	(1)	MARGPGLAPPELRIPLLLL/LAAVTGHTAAQUNCTC	PTNKTVCS
Consensus	(1)	PP L LLL AA AAQD C C KL V	
	51		100
hTrop1	(44)	RQCOCTSVGAQNTVICSKLA/KCLV/KKAEMNGSKL	GRRAK-P-EGALQNN
hTrop2	(51)	GRCOCRAIGSGMAVDCSTLT/KCLLL/KARMSAPKN	ARTLV
Consensus	(51)	CQC ALGA V CS L AKCLLLKA M A K AR P E AL N	
	101		150
hTrop1	(92)	DGLYDPDCDESGLFKA/KQCN	GTSTCWCVNAGVRRTDK-DTEITCSE
hTrop2	(101)	DGLYDPDCOPEGREKA/KQCN	QTSVCWCVN/VGVRRTDKGDL
Consensus	(101)	DGLYDPDCD G FKAQCN TS CWCVNS GVRRTDK D I C E VR	
	151		200
hTrop1	(141)	TYWLIILKHAREKPYDSKSLRTALQKEITTRYQ	LDPKFITSILYENNV
hTrop2	(151)	THHILILRHPTAGAFNHSDLDALRRLFRERYRL	HPKFAAVHYEQPT
Consensus	(151)	TH IIIDLKHK F L L K RY L PKFI AI YEN	
	201		250
hTrop1	(191)	ITILVQNSSOKTQNDVDIADVAYFFE/DVKGESL	FHSKK-MDLTVNGEQ
hTrop2	(201)	IQIELRQNTSOKAAGDVDIADAAFFE/DKGESL	FQGGGLRVRGE-
Consensus	(201)	I IDL QNSSQK DVDIAD AYYFEKDIKGESLF K LDL V GE	
	251		300
hTrop1	(240)	LDLDPGQTLIIYY/DEKAEFFSMQGLKAGVIAVIV	VVVVAVVAGIVVLVIS
hTrop2	(250)	-PLQYERTLIYYLDEIPEKFSMKRLTAGLIAVIV	VVVVAVVAGMAVLVIT
Consensus	(251)	L TLIYYLDE P FSM L AGLIAVIVVVVIALVAGI VLVIS	
	301		325
hTrop1	(290)	RKKRMAKYEKAETKE/GEHP	ELNA
hTrop2	(299)	NRKSKKYKKVEIKE/GE	LRKEPSL
Consensus	(301)	KKK AKY K EIKELGEL KE	

————— Domain 1      ..... Domain 2  
 — — — Domain 3      — . — Domain 4



7/19

## Figure 5

```

1                                     50
hTrop2 (1) MARGPGLAPPPLRLPLLLL LAAVTGHTAAQDNCTCPTNKMTVCSPDGPG
mTrop2 (1) MARGLDLAP----- LLLL LAMATRFCTAQSNCCTCPTNKMTVC DTNGPG
Consensus (51) MARG LAP LLLLLLA T AQ NCTCPTNKMTVC GPG

51                                     100
hTrop2 (51) GRCQCRA GSG AVDCSTLTSKCLLLKARMSAPKN R LVRPSEHA VDN
mTrop2 (45) GVCQCRA GSQ LVDCSTLTSKCLLLKARMSARKS R LVMPSEHA I DN
Consensus (51) G CQCRA LGS M VDCSTLTSKCLLLKARMSA K ARSLV PSEHA I DN

101                                     150
hTrop2 (101) DGLYDPDCDPEGRFKARQCNQTSVCWCVN SVGVRRTDKGDLSLRCD E LVR
mTrop2 (95) DGLYDPDCDDKGRFKARQCNQTSVCWCVN SVGVRRTDKGDQSLRCDE VVR
Consensus (101) DGLYDPDCD GRFKARQCNQTSVCWCVN SVGVRRTDKGD SLRCDE LVR

151                                     200
hTrop2 (151) THHILI L RHRPTAGAFNHSDLD AELRRLE RERY LHPKF V AVHYEQPT
mTrop2 (145) THHILI L RHRPTDRAFNHSDLD ELRRLE QERY LHPSF L SAVHYE EPT
Consensus (151) THRILIDL RHRPT AFNHSDLD AELRRLE ERYKLHP FLAAVHYE PT

201                                     250
hTrop2 (201) IQIELRQNTSOK AAGDVDI DAAYYFERDIKGESLFQGRGGLD LVRGEP
mTrop2 (195) IQIELRQNASOK LRDVDI DAAYYFERDIKGESLFMGRGLD QVRGEP
Consensus (201) IQIELRQN SQKA DVDIADAAYYFERDIKGESLF GR GLDL VRGEP

251                                     300
hTrop2 (251) LQVERTLIYYLDEI PPKF FSMKRLTAG IAVIVVVVA VAG AVL V TNR
mTrop2 (245) LHVERTLIYYLDEKPPQFSMKRLTAG IAVIAVVSVA VAG VVL V TKR
Consensus (251) L VERTLIYYLDE PP FSMKRLTAGLIAVI VV VALVAGM VLVIT R

301                                     323
hTrop2 (301) RKSGKYKKVE KELGE RKEPSL
mTrop2 (295) RKSGKYKKVE KELGE RSEPSL
Consensus (301) RKSGKYKKVEIKELGELR EPSL

```

————— Domain 1      ..... Domain 2  
 — — — Domain 3      — . . — Domain 4

8/19

## Figure 6A

		1		46
h7E6_VH	(1)	QVQLQESGPGLVPSSETLSITCTVSGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLE		
h7E6_VH_SVG	(1)	QVQLQESGPGLVPSSETLSITCTVSGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLE		
m7E6_VH	(1)	QVQLQESGPGLVAPSQSLITCTVSGFSLTSYGVHWVRQPPGKGLE		
Consensus	(1)	QVQLQESGPGLVKPSETLSITCTVSGGSISSYGVHWIRQPPGKGLE		
		47		96
h7E6_VH	(47)	WIGVIWTEGGSTDYNSALMSRVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA		
h7E6_VH_SVG	(47)	WIGVIWTEGGSTDYNSALMGRISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA		
m7E6_VH	(47)	WIGVIWTEGGSTDYNSALMERLSINKDNSKSOVFLKMNSLQDDTAVYYCA		
Consensus	(47)	WIGVIWTEGGSTDYNSALMSRVTISVDTSKNQFSLKLSSVTAADTAVYYCA		
		97	119	
h7E6_VH	(97)	RDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTSTVTVSS		
h7E6_VH_SVG	(97)	RDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTSTVTVSS		
m7E6_VH	(97)	RDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTSTVTVSS		
Consensus	(97)	RDGDYDRYTMDYWGQGTSTVTVSS		

## Figure 6B

		1		46
h7E6_VL	(1)	DIVLTQSPDSLAIVSLGERATINCRAKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQ		
h7E6_VL_L	(1)	DIVLTQSPDSLAIVSLGERATINCRAKSVSTSLYSYMHWYQQKPGQ		
h7E6_VL_N	(1)	DIVLTQSPDSLAIVSLGERATINCRAKSVSTSNYSYMHWYQQKPGQ		
m7E6_VL	(1)	DIVLTQSPASLAIVSLGERATINCRAKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQ		
Consensus	(1)	DIVMTQSPDSLAIVSLGERATINCRAKSVSTSGYSYMHWYQQKPGQ		
		47		96
h7E6_VL	(47)	PPKLLIYLASNLESGVPRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCQHSR		
h7E6_VL_L	(47)	PPKLLIYLASNLESGVPRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCQHSR		
h7E6_VL_N	(47)	PPKLLIYLASNLESGVPRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCQHSR		
m7E6_VL	(47)	PPKLLIYLASNLESGVPRFSGSGSGTDFTLTNIHPVEEEDAAVYYCQHSR		
Consensus	(47)	PPKLLIYLASNLESGVPRFSGSGSGTDFTLTISSLQAEDVAVYYCQHSR		
		97	111	
h7E6_VL	(97)	ELPYTFGGGTKLEIK		
h7E6_VL_L	(97)	ELPYTFGGGTKLEIK		
h7E6_VL_N	(97)	ELPYTFGGGTKLEIK		
m7E6_VL	(97)	ELPYTFGGGGTKLEIK		
Consensus	(97)	ELPYTFGGGGTKLEIK		

9/19

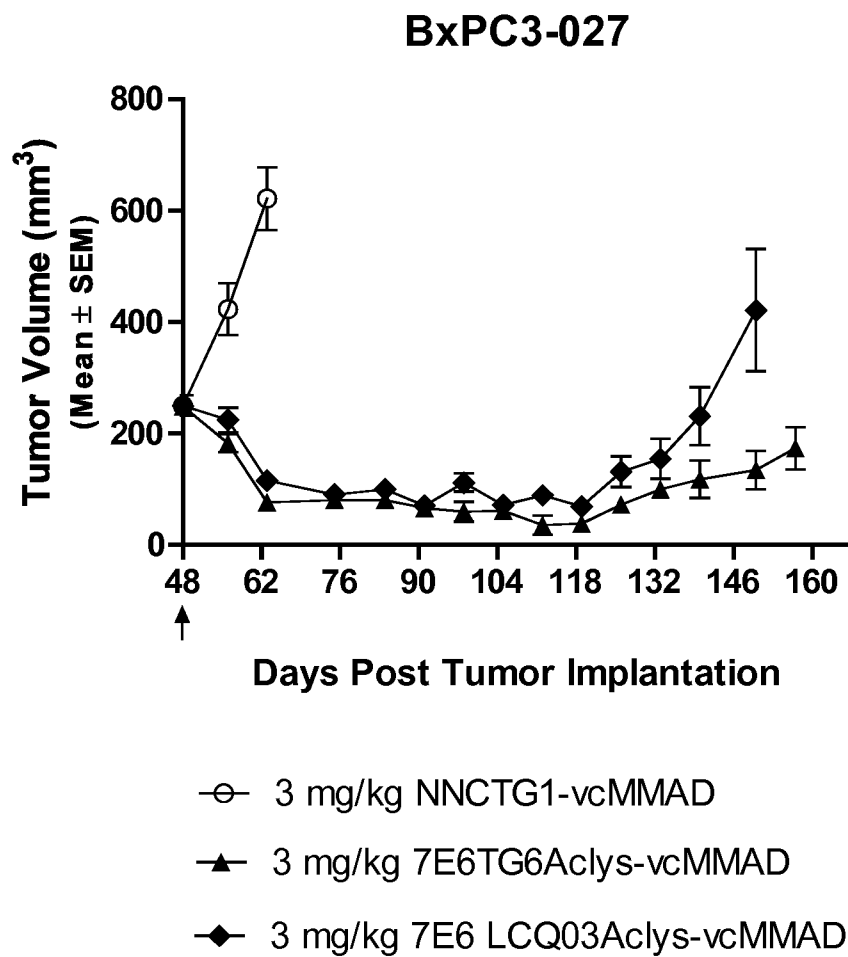
## Figure 7A

		1	46
h6G11_VH	(1)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVQAPGQGLE	
h6G11_VH_FKG	(1)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVQAPGQGLE	
m6G11_VH	(1)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVQAPGQGLE	
Consensus	(1)	QVQLVQSGAEVKKPGASVKLSCKASGYTFTSYWINWVQAPGQGLE	
		47	96
h6G11_VH	(47)	WIGNIIPSDSYSNYNKFKDRVTMTDSSTVYMSSSTSEDFAVYYC	
h6G11_VH_FKG	(47)	WIGNIIPSDSYSNYNKFKDRVTMTDSSTVYMSSSTSEDFAVYYC	
m6G11_VH	(47)	WIGNIIPSDSYSNYNKFKDKATLVDRSSSTAYMVSSPTSEDFAVYYC	
Consensus	(47)	WMGNIIPSDSYSNYNQKFKDRVTMTDRDTSTSTVYMESSLRSEDFAVYYC	
		97	115
h6G11_VH	(97)	ARGSSFDYWGQGTITVTVSS	
h6G11_VH_FKG	(97)	ARGSSFDYWGQGTITVTVSS	
m6G11_VH	(97)	ARGSSFDYWGQGTITVTVSS	
Consensus	(97)	ARGSSFDYWGQGTITVTVSS	

## Figure 7B

		1	46
h6G11_VL	(1)	EIVLTQSPAILSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRL	
h6G11_VL_SF	(1)	EIVLTQSPAILSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRL	
m6G11_VL	(1)	DILLTQSPAILSVSPGERVSTSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQRTNGSPRL	
Consensus	(1)	EIVLTQSPATLSLSPGERATLSCRASQTIGTSIHWYQQKPGQAPRL	
		47	96
h6G11_VL	(47)	LIYYASESISGIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTSSSEEDFAVYYCQSSSWPF	
h6G11_VL_SF	(47)	LIYYASESISGIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTSSSEEDFAVYYCQSSSWPF	
m6G11_VL	(47)	LIYYASESISGIPSRFSGSGSGTDFTLTSSVESEDIADYYCQSSSWPF	
Consensus	(47)	LIYYASESISGIPARFSGSGSGTDFTLTSSLEPEDFAVYYCQSSNSWPF	
		97	107
h6G11_VL	(97)	TFGQGTKLEIK	
h6G11_VL_SF	(97)	TFGQGTKLEIK	
m6G11_VL	(97)	TFGQGTKLEIK	
Consensus	(97)	TFGQGTKLEIK	

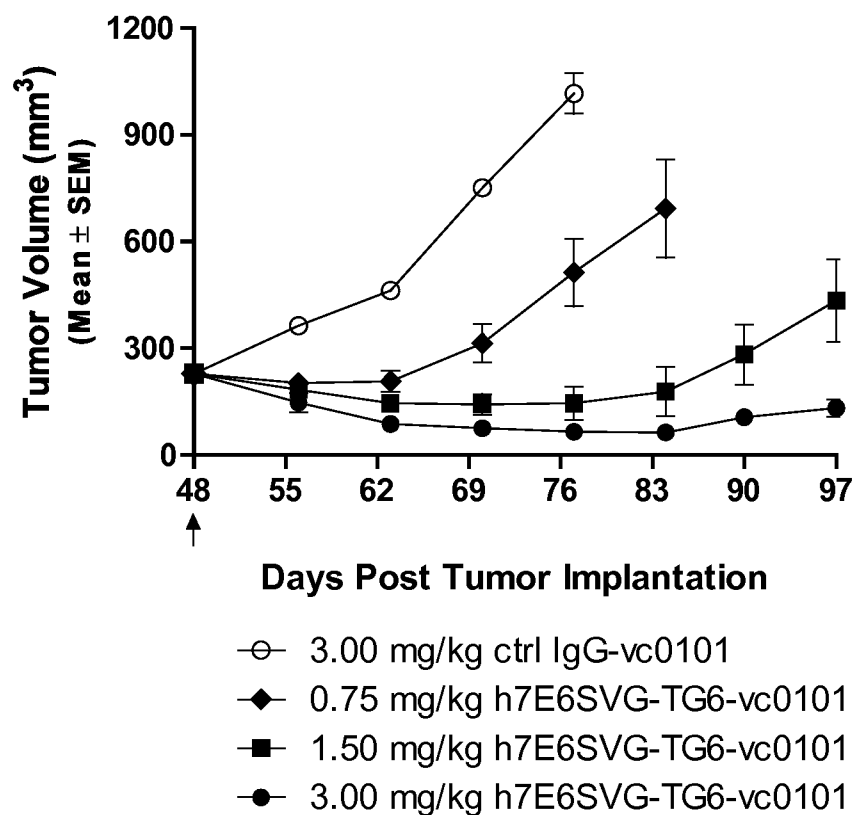
10/19

**Figure 8**

11/19

## Figure 9A

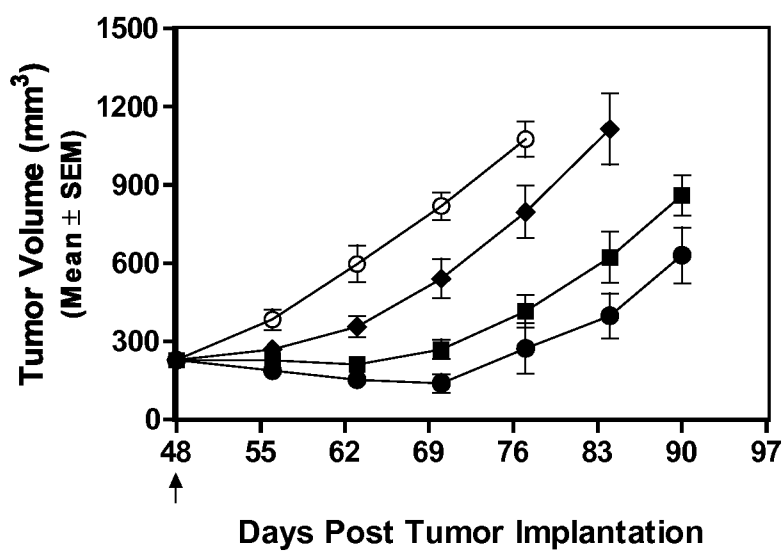
**Anti-Trop2 ADC h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 induces tumor regression in BxPC3 model**



12/19

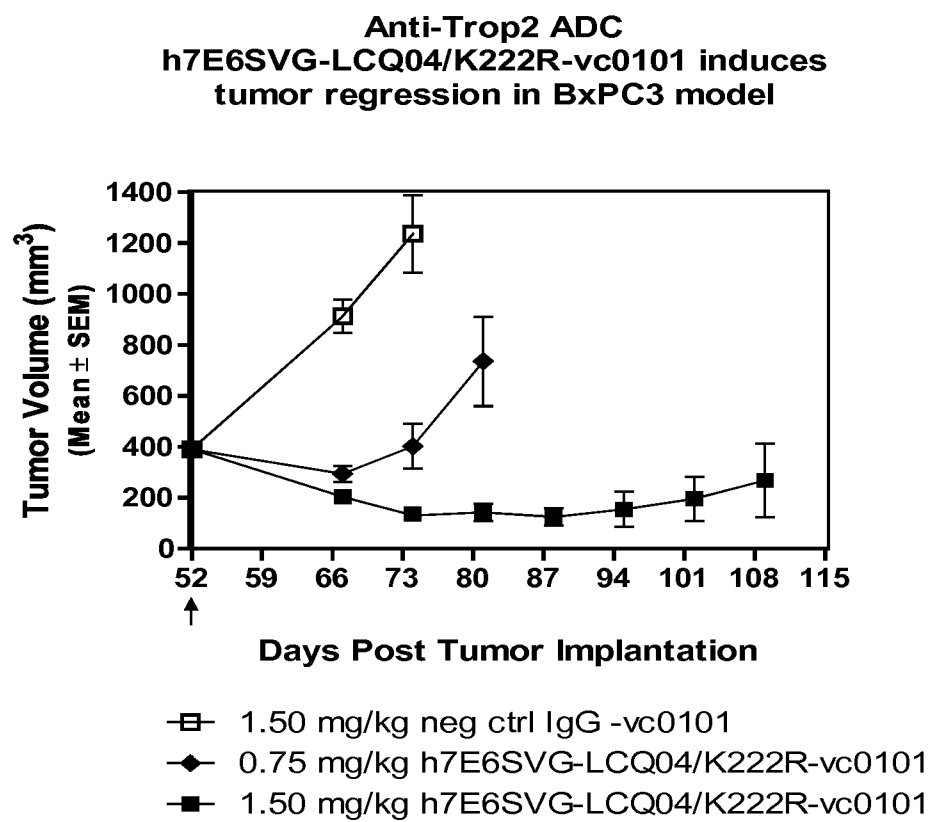
## Figure 9B

Anti-Trop2 ADC  
h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD induces  
tumor regression in BxPC3 model



- 6.0 mg/kg negative control conjugate
- ◆ 1.5 mg/kg h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD
- 3.0 mg/kg h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD
- 6.0 mg/kg h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R-PEG6MMAD

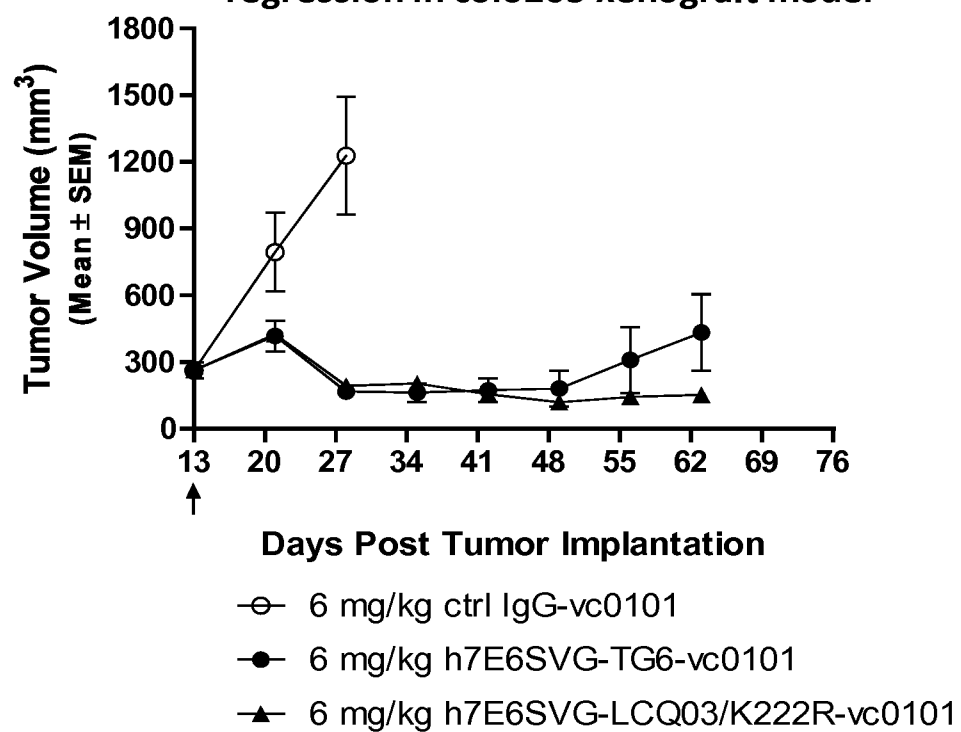
13/19

**Figure 9C**

14/19

## Figure 10

**h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 and  
h7E6SVG-LCQ03/K222R-vc0101 induce tumor  
regression in colo205 xenograft model**

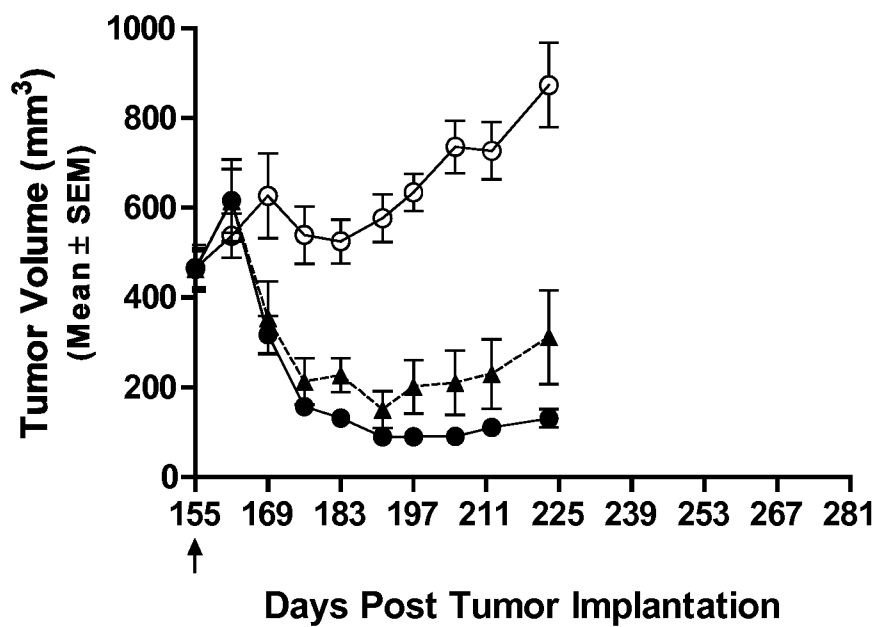




15/19

## Figure 11

**h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 induces tumor regression in  
Ova196756 PDX model**

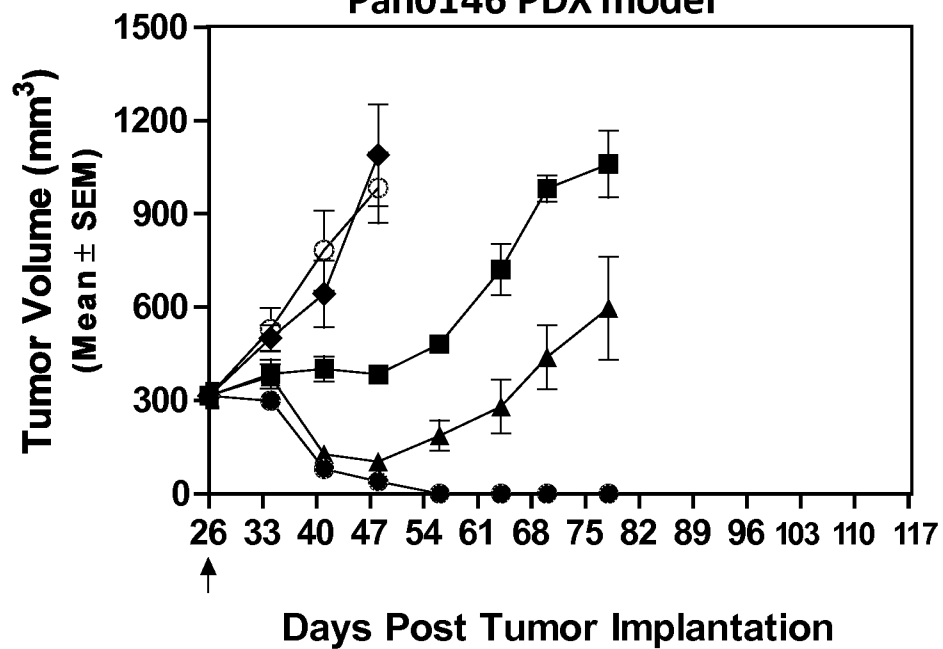


- 1.50 mg/kg neg ctrl IgG -vc0101
- △ 0.75 mg/kg h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101
- 1.50 mg/kg h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101

16/19

## Figure 12A

**h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 induces tumor regression in  
Pan0146 PDX model**

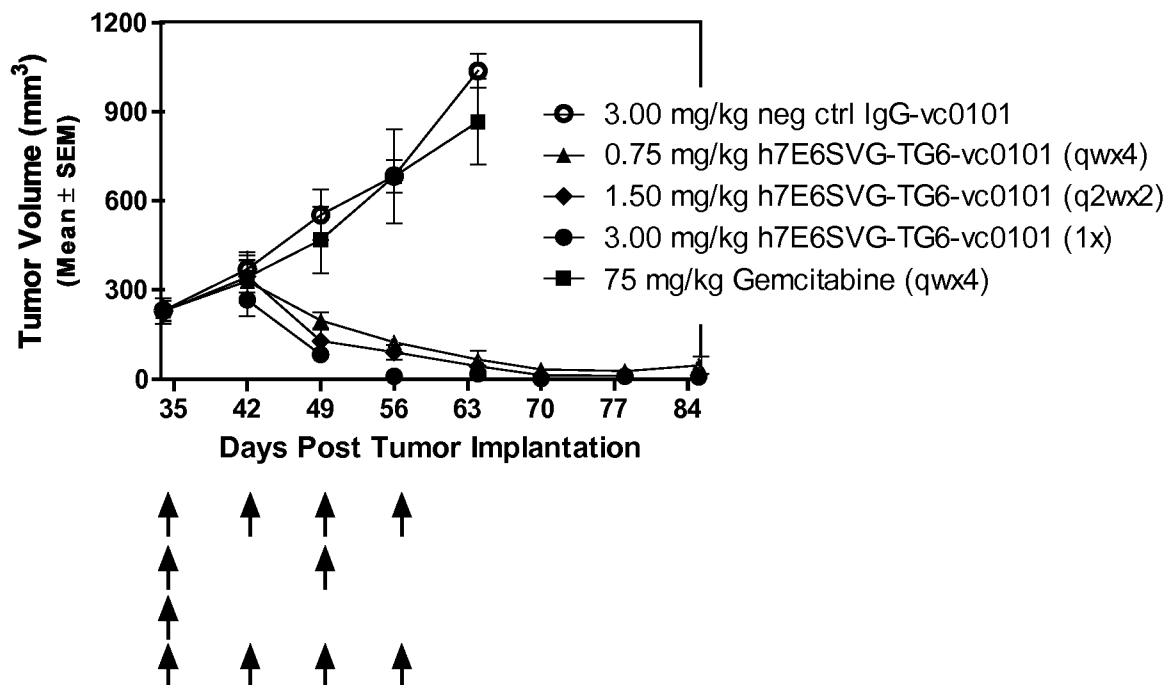


- 3.00 mg/kg ctrl IgG-vc0101
- ◆ 0.75 mg/kg h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101
- ▲ 1.50 mg/kg h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101
- 3.00 mg/kg h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101
- 75 mg/kg Gemcitabine (2qw)  
6 doses

17/19

## Figure 12B

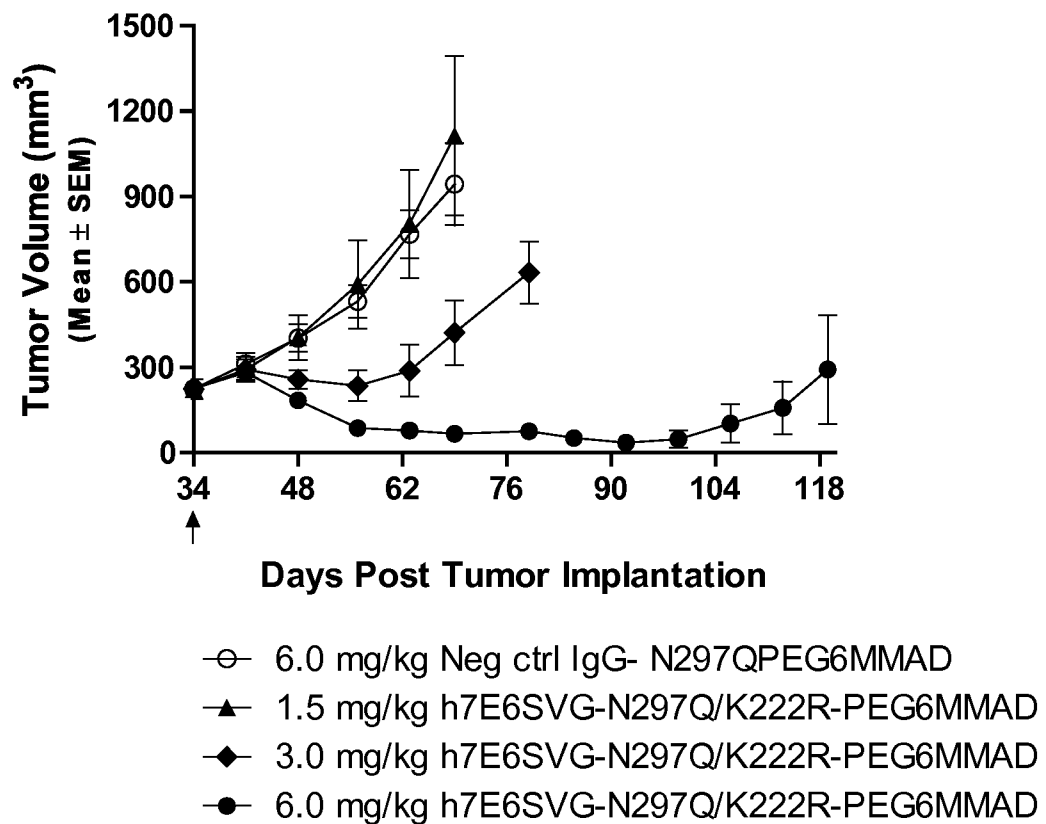
**h7E6SVG-TG6-vc0101 induces long term tumor regression in  
Pan0146 PDX model through continued dosing**



18/19

## Figure 13

**h7E6SVG N297Q/K222R PEG6MMAD induces tumor regression in Pan144607 PDX model**



19/19

## Figure 14

**h7E6SVG-N297Q/K222R induces tumor regression  
in Pan0135 PDX model**

